

FOREWORD

This manual has been prepared to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your **REXTON II** and to provide important safety information. We urge you to read it carefully and follow the recommendations to help assure the most enjoyable, safe, and trouble-free operation of your vehicle.

When it comes to service, remember that your **SSANGYONG** dealer knows your vehicle best and is interested in your complete satisfaction.

We would like to take this opportunity to thank you for choosing **REXTON II** and assure you of our continuing interest in your motoring pleasure and satisfaction.

This manual should be considered as a permanent part of your vehicle, and must remain with the vehicle at the time of resale.


 **SsangYong Motor CO., LTD.**
PYUNGTAEK, KOREA



IMPORTANT NOTICE

Please read this manual and follow the instructions carefully. Signal words such as "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "NOTE" have special meanings.


WARNING



WARNING

WARNING indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION



CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury or property damage.

NOTE



NOTE

NOTE indicates information to assist maintenance and instructions.

All information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest product information available at the time of publication.

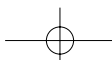
Ssangyong reserves the right to change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

This vehicle may not comply with the standards or regulations of other countries. Before attempting to register this vehicle in any other country, check all applicable regulations and make any necessary modifications.

This manual describes options and trim levels available at the time of printing, and therefore, some of the items covered may not apply to your vehicle. If any doubt exists about any of the options or trim levels, please do not hesitate to contact your Ssangyong Distributor for information on the latest specifications.

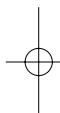
* : This asterisk in this manual signifies that an item of equipment is not included in all vehicles (model variants, engine options, models specific to one country, optional equipment, etc.).

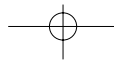
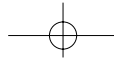
We would like to point out that non Ssangyong Genuine parts and accessories have not been examined and approved by Ssangyong, and in spite of continuous market product monitoring, we cannot certify the suitability nor the safety of such products whether they are installed or intended for fitment in our vehicles. Ssangyong is not liable for any damage caused by the use of non Ssangyong Genuine parts and accessories.

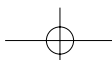


● TABLE OF CONTENTS ●

0. General	Section 0	0
1. Safety Precautions	Section 1	1
2. Ignition Key, Remote Control Key	Section 2	2
3. Opening and Closing	Section 3	3
4. Interior Switches	Section 4	4
5. Instrument Cluster	Section 5	5
6. Transmission and Brake System	Section 6	6
7. Seats	Section 7	7
8. Seat Belt and Air Bag	Section 8	8
9. Ventilation, Heating, Air Conditioning and Air Purification System	Section 9	9
10. Turbocharger System	Section 10	10
11. Convenience Devices	Section 11	11
12. In Case of Emergency	Section 12	12
13. Service and Maintenance	Section 13	13
14. Lamps	Section 14	14
15. Vehicle Care	Section 15	15
16. Index	Section 16	16







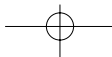
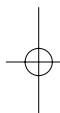
General

0

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 0-2
- Dimensions 0-3
- Specifications 0-4
- Vehicle Identification 0-8

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



RECOMMENDED FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

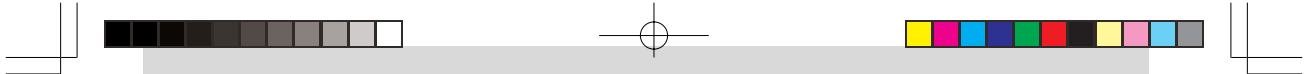
	Descriptions		Capacity	Specifications	
0					
1	Engine Oil	D27DTP	≈ 8.5 l	Quality class: Ssangyong genuine engine oil (Approved by MB Sheet 229.1 or 229.3) Viscosity: MB sheet No. 224.1	
2		D27DT	≈ 8.5 l		
3		G32D	≈ 9.0 l		
4	Engine Coolant	D27DTP	≈ 11.5 l	Ssangyong genuine coolant HOECHST GENANTIN SUPER 8023/14	
5		D27DT	≈ 11.5 l		
6		G32D	11.3 ~ 11.5 l		
7	Automatic Transmission Fluid		≈ 8.0 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (Shell ATF 3353 or Fuchs ATF 3353)	
8	Manual Transmission Fluid	2WD	≈ 3.4 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (ATF DEXRON II)	
9		4WD	≈ 3.6 l		
10	Transfer Case Fluid	AWD	≈ 1.1 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (ATF DEXRON III)	
11		TOD	≈ 1.4 l		
12		Part Time	≈ 1.4 l		
13	Axle Oil	Front	Non IOP	≈ 1.4 l ~ 1.5 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (API GL-5 & SAE 80W/90)
14			IOP	≈ 0.78 l	
15		Rear	Rigid	≈ 2.0 ~ 2.2 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (Shell synthetic fuel efficient GL 75W/90)
16			IRS	≈ 1.5 l	
	Brake / Clutch Fluid		As required	Ssangyong genuine oil (DOT4)	
	Power Steering Fluid		≈ 1.0 l	Ssangyong genuine oil (ATF DEXRON II or III)	

⚠ WARNING

- Use only Ssangyong recommended fluids and lubricants.
- Keep the specified levels when adding or replacing the fluids.
- Do not mix any different types or brands of oils or fluids. This may cause damages.

D27DTP: Diesel 2.7 Power-Up
D27DT: Diesel 2.7
G32D: Gasoline

0-2



DIMENSIONS Unit: mm

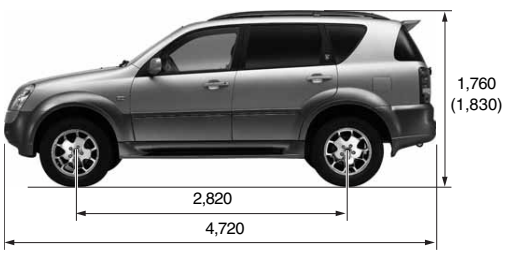
Top View



Front View



Side View



Rear View



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

* () : Optional

0-3

SPECIFICATIONS (I)

* (): Optional, []: 2WD, D27DTP: Diesel 2.7 Power-Up, D27DT: Diesel 2.7, G32D: Gasoline

0	Descriptions	D27DTP	D27DT	G32D		
1	General	Overall length (mm)	4,720	←		
2		Overall width (mm)	1,870	←		
3		Overall height (mm)	1,760 (1,830)	←		
4		Gross vehicle weight (kg)	2,760	←		
5		Curb vehicle weight (kg)	A/T	2,099	2,101	
6			M/T	—	2,088	
7		Fuel	Diesel	←	Gasoline	
8	Fuel tank capacity (ℓ)	78	←	←		
9	Minimum Turning Radius	5.7m	←	←		
10	Engine	Numbers of cylinders/ Compression ratio	5 / 17.5:1	5 / 18:1	6 / 10:1	
11		Total displacement (cc)	2,696	←	3,199	
12		Camshaft arrangement	DOHC	←	←	
13		Max. power	A/T	186 PS / 4,000 rpm	165 PS / 4,000 rpm	220 PS / 6,100 rpm
14			M/T	—	165 PS / 4,000 rpm	—
15		Max. torque	A/T	395 Nm / 1,600~3,000 rpm	340 Nm / 2,400 rpm	312 Nm / 4,600 rpm
16			M/T	—	340 Nm / 2,400 rpm	—
		Idle speed	750 ± 50 rpm	←	700 ± 50 rpm	
	Cooling system	Water-cooled / forced circulation	←	←		
	Coolant capacity (ℓ)	11.5	←	11.3 ~ 11.5		
	Lubrication type	Gear pump, forced circulation	←	←		

0-4

SPECIFICATIONS (II)

Descriptions		D27DTP	D27DT	G32D	0	
Engine	Max. oil capacity (ℓ) (when shipping)	9.2	←	9.8	1	
	Turbocharger and cooling type	Turbocharger, air-cooled	←	—	2	
Manual Transmission	Operating type	—	Semi- Remote control, floor change type	—	3	
	Gear ratio	1st	—	4.315	—	4
		2nd	—	2.475	—	5
		3rd	—	1.536	—	6
		4th	—	1.000	—	7
		5th	—	0.807	—	8
		Reverse	—	3.919	—	9
Automatic Transmission	Model	Electronic, 5-speed	←	←	10	
	Operating type	Floor change type	←	←	11	
	Gear ratio	1st	3.595	←	3.951	12
		2nd	2.186	←	2.423	13
		3rd	1.405	←	1.486	14
		4th	1.000	←	1.000	15
		5th	0.831	←	0.833	16
		Reverse 1st	3.167	←	3.147	
Reverse 2nd		1.926	←	1.930		

0-5

SPECIFICATIONS (III)

* () Optional

0	Descriptions		D27DTP	D27DT	G32D	
1	Transfer Case	Model	AWD	Part-time (TOD)	Part-time (AWD)	
2		Type	Planetary gear type	←	←	
3		Gear ratio	High (4H)	—	1.000 : 1	←
4	Clutch (M/T)	Low (4L)	—	2.483 : 1	←	
5		Operating type	—	Hydraulic type	—	
6	Power Steering	Disc type	—	Dry single diaphragm type	—	
7		Type	Rack and pinion	←	←	
8		Steering angle	Inner	36.17°	←	←
9	Front Axle	Outer	32.4°	←	←	
10		Drive shaft type	Ball joint type	←	←	
11	Rear Axle	Axle housing type	IOP type	Build-up type	Build-up type (IOP type)	
12		Drive shaft type	Semi-floating type (Ball joint type)	Semi-floating type	Semi-floating type (ball joint type)	
13		Axle housing type	Build-up type (IRS type)	Build-up type	Build-up type (IRS type)	
14	Brake	Master cylinder type	Tandem type	←	←	
15		Booster type	Vacuum assisted booster type	←	←	
16		Brake type	Front wheels	Disc type	←	←
17			Rear wheels	Disc type	←	←
18	Parking brake	Cable type (Automatic parking brake)	←	←		
19	Suspension	Front suspension	Wishbone + coil spring	←	←	
20		Rear suspension	5-link + coil spring (Multi-link + Coil spring) (EAS)	5-link + coil spring	5-link + coil spring (Multi-link + Coil spring) (EAS)	

0-6

SPECIFICATIONS (III)

* () Optional

	Descriptions	D27DTP	D27DT	G32D
Air Conditioner	Refrigerant (capacity)	R - 134a / 720 ± 30g (R - 134a / 1120 ± 30g)	←	←
	Electrical			
	Battery type / Capacity (V-AH)	MF / 12 - 90	←	←
	Starter capacity (V-kW)	12 - 2.2	←	12 - 1.8
	Alternator capacity (V-A)	12 - 140 (12 - 115)	←	12 - 115

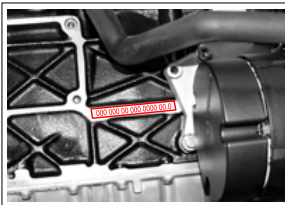
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

0-7

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION

0

1. Engine Number



Gasoline Engine: The engine number is stamped on the lower area of cylinder block in exhaust manifold side.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

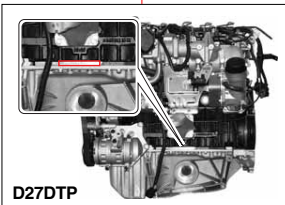
12

13

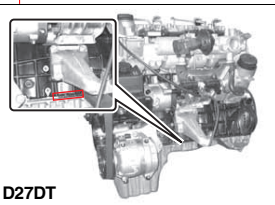
14

15

16



D27DTP



D27DT

Diesel Engine (D27DTP, D27DT): The engine number is stamped on the lower area of cylinder block behind the Intake manifold.

2. Chassis Number



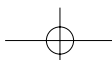
The chassis number is stamped on the frame behind the front right tire.

3. Certification Label



The certification label is located on the passenger's door sill.

0-8



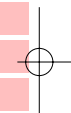
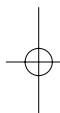
Safety Precautions

1

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Checks before Starting a Journey 1-2
- Starting the Engine and Driving Off the Vehicle 1-5
- Safety Precautions 1-7
- Direct Injection Type Diesel Engine 1-13
- Precautions Regarding Unauthorized Modification & Alteration 1-15

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



CHECKS BEFORE STARTING A JOURNEY

CHECKS BEFORE STARTING A JOURNEY (I)

DAILY CHECK

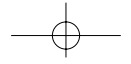
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and washer fluid level.
 - Check the drive belts for wear and looseness.
 - Check the fluid leaks underbody.
- ※ Perform daily check everyday before starting a journey.

CHECK THE VEHICLE OUTSIDE

1. Check the tire inflation and wear.
2. Check the engine oil and other fluid/oil levels in the engine compartment.
3. Clean the windshield and rear glasses, side mirrors, and room mirrors.
4. Make sure that the engine hood and tailgate are properly closed.
5. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the danger area around the vehicle.

CHECK THE VEHICLE INSIDE


1. Make sure that all doors including the tailgate are properly closed.
2. Adjust the driver's seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust the outside and inside rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten the seat belts and be sure that all other occupants have fastened theirs properly.
5. Check operation of the parking brake.
6. Check that all appropriate warning lights are operating when turning the ignition key to the "ON" position.
7. Check the operations of the clutch pedal, accelerator pedal, and brake pedal.
8. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the danger area around the vehicle.



CHECKS BEFORE STARTING A JOURNEY (II)


CHECKING AND ADJUSTMENT

- Make sure that the doors, sunroof, tailgate and fuel filler door are completely closed before driving.
- Adjust the driver's seat, head restraint and rearview mirrors for comfortable driving.
- Put away things that interfere with driving.

 CAUTION

- Do not place any objects such as can under the driver's feet as it might interfere with applying your brake, clutch or accelerator pedals.
- Make sure that the floor mat is firmly fixed and has proper thickness. Otherwise, it might interfere with your pedal operation.

- Adjust the outside and inside rearview mirrors to the desired position.

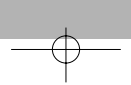
 CAUTION

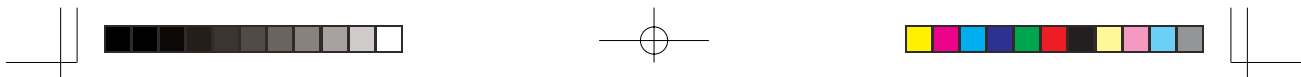
Do not attempt to adjust the driver's seat, rearview mirrors, or steering wheel while driving. Adjustments should be done before driving.

- Before driving, all occupants should fasten their seat belts.

- Check all warning lights, indicators and gauges (fuel, vehicle speed, tachometer etc.) with the ignition switch "ON".
- Check the pedal (brake, accelerator, clutch) operations.
- Make sure that there are not any obstacles around the vehicle.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

CHECKS BEFORE STARTING A JOURNEY (III)

FUEL RECOMMENDATION

Commercially available high-quality fuels are suitable. Fuel quality has a decisive influence on the power output, driveability and life of the engine. The additives contained in the fuel play an important role in this connection. You should therefore use only high-quality fuels.

Diesel Engine

Use diesel fuel at 50 cetane rating or higher.

Gasoline Engine

Fuel with too low an octane number can cause pre-ignition (detonation). Ssangyong can not be held liable for resultant damage.

CAUTION

For correct octane rating setting and other use of gasoline (ex. Leaded), consult your Ssangyong Dealer.

CAUTION

Engine and exhaust system will be damaged.

- Do not use leaded fuel to the vehicle for unleaded fuel.
- Use the fuel with specified or higher Research Octane Number recommended for your country by Ssangyong.

It is not covered by warranty.

Do not Use Methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your Rexton. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system.

NOTE

The warranty policy will not cover damage of the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of methanol or fuel containing methanol.

Operation in Foreign Countries

If you are going to drive your Rexton in another country, be sure to:

- Observe all regulations regarding registration and insurance.
- Check that a suitable fuel is available.

Vehicle Fueling from Drums or Storage Containers

For safety reasons (particularly when using noncommercial fueling systems) fuel containers, pumps and hoses must be properly earthed.

Static electricity build up can occur under certain atmospheric and fuel flow conditions if unearthed hoses, particularly plastic, are fitted to the fuel dispensing pump.

It is therefore recommended that earthed pumps with integrally earthed hoses be used, and that storage containers be properly earthed during all noncommercial fueling operations.

STARTING THE ENGINE AND DRIVING OFF THE VEHICLE



1. Apply the parking brake.
2. Make sure that there are no persons or obstacles in the danger area around the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

The engine in an automatic transmission equipped vehicle can be started only when the selector lever is at the "P" or "N" position. The engine in a manual transmission equipped vehicle can be started only when the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

Do not turn the ignition key to the "START" position while the engine is running. It could result in serious start motor damage.



3. • **Automatic transmission equipped vehicle**

Move the selector lever to the "P" position and depress the brake pedal.

- **Manual transmission equipped vehicle**

Move the gearshift lever to the Neutral position and fully depress the brake pedal and the clutch pedal.

⚠ WARNING

Depress the brake pedal when the selector lever is at the "P" position. Never depress the accelerator pedal.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

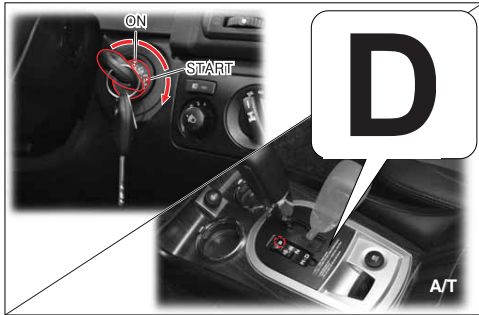
16

REXTON II

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1-5

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



4. • **Diesel engine equipped vehicle:**
Insert the ignition key into the key cylinder and turn it to the “ON” position without depressing the accelerator pedal. As soon as the glow indicator () goes out, turn the key to the “START” position to start the engine.
- **Gasoline engine equipped vehicle:**
Turn the ignition key to “ON” position and check the appropriate warning lights are operating.
5. Release the key when the engine starts. If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission and is engaged at neutral (N), it is ok to release the clutch pedal when the engine runs.

6. Warm up the engine in idling speed (below -15°C: approx 3 minutes).
7. Make sure that there are no persons or obstacles in the danger area around the vehicle.
8. Release the parking brake.
9. • **Automatic transmission equipped vehicle**
Keep the brake pedal depressed and shift into the “D” position. Make sure that the position indicators of “D” and “1” are coming on. Slowly release the brake pedal to begin moving.
- **Manual transmission equipped vehicle**
Keep the brake pedal and clutch pedal depressed and shift into the “1” position. Release the brake pedal and gradually depress the accelerator while slowly releasing the clutch to begin moving.

ENGINE STOP

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed even after the vehicle has been stopped.
2. Automatic transmission equipped vehicle: Place the gear selector lever to “P” position.
Manual transmission equipped vehicle: Place the gear shift lever to neutral position
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (I)

Ignition Key/Remote Control Key

1. Never use any duplicated key not provided by Ssangyong. It may cause a fire due to an overload in the electric circuit.
2. If you lose your keys, you have to replace the whole key set to prevent from theft.
3. Avoid shock to the transmitter in the remote control key and do not get it wet.
4. Only use the batteries with the same specifications to replace the discharged battery. Do not reverse the polarity.

Turbocharger System (Diesel Engine Equipped Vehicle)

If the oil supply for the bearing assembly of the fast rotating turbo charger stops, the stop will cause the turbocharger to seize. Therefore, the following cares are necessary to prevent the seizure.

1. After starting the engine, let it run for approx. 2 minutes at idle speed (Avoid acceleration or driving off the vehicle).
2. After changing the engine oil and oil filter, start the engine and let it run for approx. 2 minutes at idle speed (Avoid acceleration or driving off the vehicle).
3. Do not stop the engine immediately after coming back from high load driving (such as high speed driving or driving on long slope). Let the engine run for approx. 2 minutes at idle speed to cool it down.

Air Bag

1. Never impact the air bag installations by hands or tools.
2. The air bag system serves as a supplement to the seat belt. Make sure that you and your passengers always fasten the seat belts properly even if the air bags are installed in the vehicle.
3. Do not place any objects on the air bag inflation location. You may be injured by those objects during deployment.
4. The air bag system should be inspected 10 years after installation regardless of its appearance and other conditions.
5. Repairs to the air bag system should be done only by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
6. Do not diagnose the circuit with a circuit tester. Do not attempt to modify any air bag components including the steering wheel, air bag mounting area, and harness.
7. Never install a child restraint in the front seat. The children on the restraint could be seriously injured by the air bag in a collision.
8. The deployed air bag unit should be removed from the vehicle and replaced with a new one.
9. When the air bag is deployed, the relevant components will be very hot, so do not touch them until they have cooled down.
10. A person who is smaller than 140 cm should sit in the rear.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

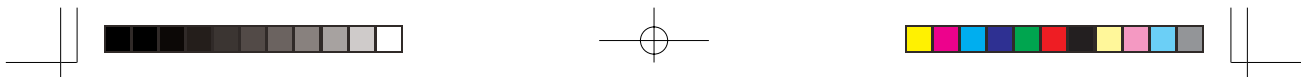
15

16

REXTON II

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1-7



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (II)

Hazardous Materials

Do not store any flammable items or disposable lighters in the console box or other spaces. In hot weather, they can explode and cause a fire.

Genuine Parts

Always use only Ssangyong genuine parts for replacement. Ssangyong is not liable for any damage caused by the use of non-Ssangyong genuine parts and accessories.

Tire

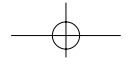
1. Be sure to use the same size and type of tires from the same manufacturer on all wheels. Otherwise, damage can be caused to the powertrain.
2. Keep the specified tire inflation pressure.
3. Make sure that the spare tire is ready for use at any time. After installing the spare tire on a wheel, do not drive for a long distance. Instead, visit a nearby dealer or tire shop to replace the spare tire with a regular tire for driving.
4. Always check the tire surface for damage and uneven wear before driving and replace it if needed.
5. Using tires of different specifications may cause high fuel consumption, long stopping distance, vehicle body vibration, heavy steering operation, and poor ABS operation.

Power Window

1. When you operate the rear windows from the driver's seat while a child sits in the rear, make sure that no body part of the child is between the window and the window frame.
2. When carrying children in the rear seat, press the rear door window lock switch to make the rear door switches inoperative.
3. Make sure that all passengers have their body parts such as hands inside the vehicle.
4. When closing the windows, be aware of safety conditions before operation.

Glass Care

1. Be careful not to damage the rear heated wire and diversity antenna when cleaning the rear glass.
2. Do not install any sunshield on the windshield glass and rear glass. It may adversely affect the rear heated wire and receiving sensitivity of the antenna.
3. The rain and automatic light sensors are installed on the upper middle front of the windshield (if equipped). If these sensors are contaminated or covered with various coating sprays, the automatic rain sensing wipers and lights may not work properly.



SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (III)

Child Restraint

When transporting infants or small children, an appropriate child restraint system should always be used. The child restraint system should be appropriate for your child's weight and height and properly fit the car's seat. Accident statistics indicate that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seat rather than in the front seat.

WARNING

- Infants and small children should always be restrained in an infant or child restraint.
- NEVER INSTALL A REAR-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THE FRONT SEAT WITH FRONT PASSENGER AIR BAG.
- A child in a rear-facing child restraint installed in the front seat can be seriously injured if the front passenger air bag inflates. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.
- A front-facing child restraint should be secured in the rear seat whenever possible. If installed in the front passenger seat, adjust the seat as far back as it will go.
- When installing a child restraint system, follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- When not in use, keep your child restraint system secured with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.
- Do not hold a child while riding in a vehicle.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat.
- Do not allow a child in the cargo areas while the vehicle is moving.

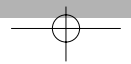
WARNING

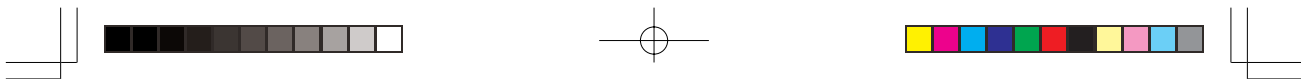
- Children who have outgrown child restraint systems should sit in the rear seat and be restrained with the seat belt. If child's seating position has a shoulder belt which is on or very close to the face or neck, move the child close to the center of the vehicle, slightly inboard of the shoulder belt, or move the child to a position without a shoulder belt if possible.
- Please note that the three point seat belt is designed for a person who is taller than 140 cm.

Warming Up the Engine

1. Do not drive without warming up the engine. Driving immediately after starting the engine may decrease the engine's life expectancy. Warm up the engine before moving your vehicle.
 2. Do not warm up the engine excessively. Warm up the engine just until the coolant temperature gauge begins to move.
 3. Excessive engine warming increases the fuel consumption and air pollution. An optimized warming up time is approx. 2 minutes.
- ※ Do not accelerate the engine during the warming up period.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (IV)

Driving the Automatic Transmission Equipped Vehicle

1. Keep the brake pedal depressed and shift the gear selection lever into the “D” position. Make sure that the “D1” light is on the instrument cluster.
Drive off the vehicle by releasing the brake pedal slowly.
2. To avoid any possible damage to the automatic transmission, do not abruptly drive off or accelerate the vehicle after shifting the gear selection lever into the “D” position. Especially on a hill, move the lever to the “D” position with the brake pedal depressed and wait for a couple of seconds until the position indicator of “D1” is on the instrument cluster.
3. Your vehicle may move backward on a steep hill even if the shift lever is engaged into the “D” position. Therefore, always depress the brake pedal when you need to stop on such a hill.

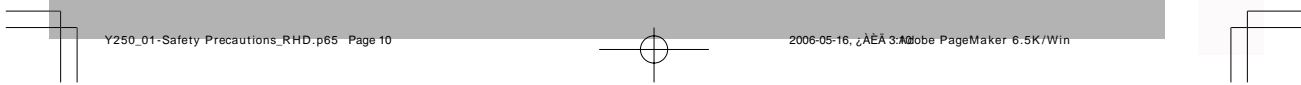
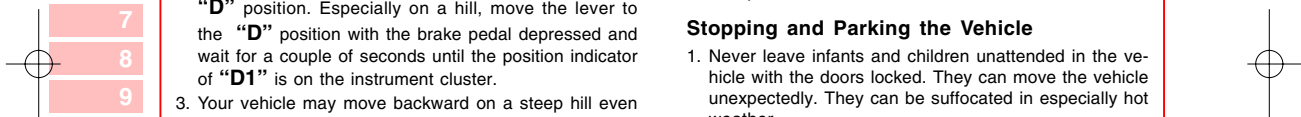
Cautions While Driving

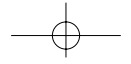
1. Do not turn off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. The power steering function and the brake assist function will be deactivated.
2. Do not attempt to adjust the driver’s seat, rear view mirrors, or steering wheel while driving. Adjustments should be done before driving.

3. While driving, do not depress the brake pedal when the accelerator pedal is depressed. Otherwise, the response from the accelerator pedal may be delayed. This symptom is the safety function to protect the vehicle’s drive system. This symptom can be eliminated if you depress and release the accelerator pedal once when the brake pedal is not depressed.
4. Do not operate the steering wheel abruptly. This will cause unstable driving situations and can end with an unexpected accident.

Stopping and Parking the Vehicle

1. Never leave infants and children unattended in the vehicle with the doors locked. They can move the vehicle unexpectedly. They can be suffocated in especially hot weather.
2. When parking the vehicle on a hilly road, apply the parking brake and chock the blocks under the wheels. Place the gear selector lever to the “P” position (automatic transmission equipped vehicle).
3. If possible, do not stop and park the vehicle on the steep road.
4. Do not park in places where hay, foliage, paper, rags, oil, or other easily inflammable materials are kept. While driving or after immediately driving, the muffler and exhaust pipe are hot; inflammable materials near the vehicle might cause a fire.





SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (V)

Extinguisher

Keep it ready for use at any time. Be familiar with how to use it. For more information, read the label on the surface of the fire extinguisher.

Precautions for Children or Elderly Car Passengers

- Do not leave infants, children or old people alone in the vehicle. An accident can take place if they misuse some devices in the vehicle. In addition, the temperature inside the car can rise when doors or windows are closed during summer, placing passengers at risk for suffocation.
- Do not let children, infants, old people, or a pregnant woman sit in the front passenger seat with the airbag. The degree of shock of the airbag's expansion can be fatal or inflict serious injuries to such passengers.
- Keep devices such as the ignition key out of children's reach to avoid damaging the vehicle or prevent accidents.

Do Not Stick Any Part of Your Body Out of the Window

Do not stick any part of your body out of the window and sunroof while the car is running or while you are maneuvering to park. You might be hurt by the passing vehicles or other unseen obstacles.

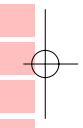
Precautions for Power Window

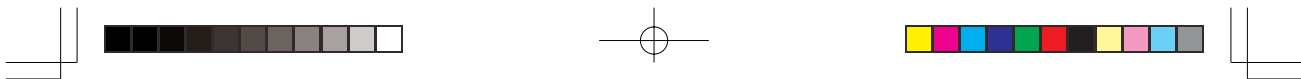
- When closing the front passenger's and rear windows from driver's seat, be aware of safety conditions before operation. Parts of the body can be trapped by the window.
- When carrying children in the rear seat, press the window lock switch to make the rear window switches inoperative.
- Do not stick any part of body out of window.

When Sleeping in Your Vehicle

- Do not sleep in a parked car with closed windows. In particular, if you stay or sleep in the car with the engine running and the air-conditioner or heater turned on, you can suffocate to death.
- Sleeping in a closed space with the engine running puts you at high risk of suffocation from the exhausts.
- While sleeping, you may accidentally touch the gear shift lever or accelerator and thereby cause an accident.
- While sleeping in the car with the engine running, you may accidentally step on the accelerator, thereby overheating the engine and exhaust pipe and causing a fire.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (VI)

No Alcohol and Drugs! Take A Rest!

- Avoid driving for an extended period of time. Driving continuously without rest makes you prone to dozing off and thus causes an accident. For your safety, take a rest every 2 hours.
- Driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs is prohibited. It impairs judgment, making driving highly risky. Drunk driving is also a legal offense.

Do not drive with Tail Gate or Doors Open

- Do not drive with the tail gate open. Otherwise, you can be suffocated by the exhaust gas.
- If you drive your vehicle with the tail gate open, loose objects inside the vehicle may cause an accident.
- Driving the vehicle with the doors open puts the passenger at risk of being thrown out, which can cause serious injury.
- Always drive the vehicle with the doors and tailgate closed. Doors can be accidentally opened and doors are opened by children touching knobs. Those may cause a serious accident.

Check for any Passing Vehicle when Getting Off

When getting off, check the rear and side of the car for passing vehicles or pedestrians. Vehicles or motorcycles coming from the rear, if unchecked, might stumble on you when you open the door.

When Loading On Vehicle with 7-Seaters

If the third row seats are occupied by passengers, evenly distribute the luggage in the vehicle inside.

Use Only Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation

Have your vehicle checked up or repaired at Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation. Repairing your vehicle by other service stations will not be covered under the terms of our warranty. And the warranty is also not liable for the problems caused by such repair.

DIRECT INJECTION TYPE DIESEL ENGINE

⚠ CAUTIONS FOR DIRECT INJECTION TYPE DIESEL ENGINE (I)

Direct Injection (DI) Type Diesel Engine

Compared to Indirect Injection (IDI) Type Diesel Engine that uses a mechanical fuel injection system, a Direct Injection (DI) Type Diesel Engine controls the amount of injected fuel and the fuel injection timing electronically. This advanced engine enhances the output power and reduces the noxious exhaust gas (CO, HC, NOx....). Because the Direct Injection Diesel Engine is operated by high pressure (1,600 bars), any removal, modification or service of the engine may contaminate the inside of the system and cause the system to malfunction. In that case, the malfunction and any related systems are not under warranty of this company.

Warning for Using Low Quality Fuel or Bio Fuel

The fuel system in a DI engine equipped vehicle has many precisely machined components. Using low quality fuel could result in serious damage to the engine due to the water or impurities in the fuel.

Never use the low quality fuel.

Diesel Engine

Use diesel fuel at 50 cetane rating or higher.

Gasoline Engine

Fuel with too low an octane number can cause pre-ignition (detonation). Ssangyong can not be held liable for resultant damage.

⚠ CAUTION

For correct octane rating setting and other use of gasoline (ex. Leaded), consult your Ssangyong Dealer.

System Safety Mode

When the vehicle has a system error, the vehicle operates in safety mode to maintain minimum driving conditions and to prevent the system from being damaged. In this mode, the engine driving force may be decreased or the engine may stall. When this happens, have the system checked at a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

Supplementary Heating Device

- PTC (Positive Temperature Coefficient)

This supplementary heater is an electrical air heating type and installed on the heater outlet port. This device improves the heating effect by increasing the temperature of flowing air into the passenger room.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

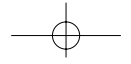
15

16

REXTON II

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1-13



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

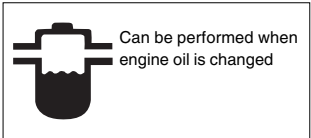
⚠ CAUTIONS FOR DIRECT INJECTION TYPE DIESEL ENGINE (II)

Engine Check Indicator



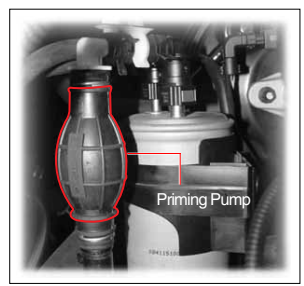
The Engine check indicator on the instrument cluster comes on when the fuel or major electronic systems of the engine are not working properly. As a result, the engine's power output may decrease or the engine may stall. If this happens, please visit the nearest Ssangyong dealer or authorized service operator.

Water Separator Warning Light



When the water level inside of the water drain in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light and an alarming sound are activated. In addition, the driving force of the vehicle decreases. If this happens, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter. Please refer to Chapter 5 "How to drain the water from the fuel filter" in this manual.

Priming Pump Operating Conditions



1. When completely consumed the fuel
 2. After draining the water from the fuel filter
 3. After replacing the fuel filter
- If this happens, pump fuel until the priming pump is fully filled. Then, start the engine.

⚠ WARNING

- When engine check warning light comes on, immediately stop driving and have the engine system checked at a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Drain the water from fuel filter & water separator immediately after the water separator warning light comes on.
- The fuel system in the engine may get seriously damaged if you keep driving while the warning light is on.

PRECAUTIONS REGARDING UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION & ALTERATION

! PRECAUTIONS REGARDING UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION & ALTERATION (I)

Do not modify this vehicle.

If unauthorized modification is made on the vehicle, the company is not liable for repairing the modified parts even during the term of warranty. Other part problems caused by modification are also not covered.

The vehicle you bought is equipped with a large number of precision parts that have passed through countless experiments and tests. These parts are deeply and systematically interwoven. Therefore, if any part is modified or altered without authorization, said parts may be damaged from the decrease in performance or overloading, which can then cause critical damage to the vehicle and human life.

Do not modify without authorization the driving gear system, including the engine, just to upgrade the vehicle's performance and beauty.

- Prohibition of using unauthorized modification of the engine or parts for the exhaust

Changing without authorization the preset value in the fuel supply system and inlet, exhaust and electric systems, and changing or adding unauthorized parts is illegal and may cause serious problem with the vehicle's durability.

In particular, modifying your vehicle into the LPG vehicle might bring serious damage to the vehicle's performance and durability. Not only the engine but also the transmission and wheel alignment are excluded from the warranty.

If you install a wheel dust cover on the tires to enhance the beauty of tire parts, the heat caused by friction in braking might bring serious problems in performance, causing Vapor Lock and Fade phenomena.

Do not modify the car's audio system and install other additional electronic devices such as wireless communication equipment, rear view camera, LCD TV, and remote starting device.

This vehicle's electronic system contains electronic circuits and fuses for the installation of standard electric and electronic devices. If you add new devices or circuits using the several existing devices and circuits at a time, electric and electronic devices can be damaged from overloading and may ignite. In addition, when you do drilling work in installing devices such as an antenna may expose the vehicle to rusting.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

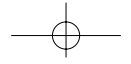
15

16

REXTON II

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

1-15



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

⚠ PRECAUTIONS REGARDING UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION & ALTERATION (II)

Do not use the nonstandard tires, wheels, and other related parts.
 Installing nonstandard tires such as tires with greater width than prescribed can wear out the power delivery system or friction-damage related parts. In addition, other problems such as increase of fuel consumption and braking distance, vehicle's shudder, and decrease of steering power can all degrade the vehicle's performance. The speedometer and odometer can also become inaccurate. The vehicle with automatic transmission may have the shock in changing the speed.

Do not use duplicate key
 A duplicate key might cause malfunction to the ignition key cylinder and deter the ignition motor to return to the original state. If so, electronic circuitry can be damaged and may ignite from the ignition motor's continuing rotation.

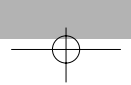
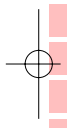
Do not equip the sunroof or color glasses at your discretion.
 If you install a sunroof by cutting the vehicle's roof, rust and leakage may occur in the cut part. Installing color glasses to block ultraviolet rays and better appearance may cause leakage and other many problems.

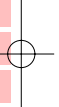
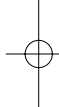
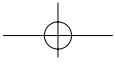
Do not equip the vehicle with bumper guards sold in the market.
 Installing bumper guard or other guard bars that are being sold in the market may cause problems in parking and stopping due to the extended length of vehicle, and increase in fuel cost due to additional vehicle weight, and rusting may occur in the holes for equipping the guards. And because of the absence of shock absorber in the bumper guard, even accidents during low-speed driving will be much serious compared with the damage that unmodified cars might sustain.

Do not modify or replace the vehicle flooring or the seats at your discretion.

- When replacing the interior flooring of vehicle with laminated paper

To improve the comfort of cushion and to facilitate the cleaning of the vehicle, some drivers replace the flooring with laminated paper after removing the seats. However, this may cause damage to the various electronic system control units and wiring. This also may hinder the function of the seat rail that enables for the seat to move forward and backward. In this case, the locking system to fix the location of seats may malfunction, which might lead to a serious accident if the loose seats tilt forward or backward during an uphill climb or downhill descent.





⚠ PRECAUTIONS REGARDING UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATION & ALTERATION (III)

- When exchanging the seats with new ones or equipping separate seat covers.

There are several types of seat covers according to role and function although with the same vehicle type. Replacing the seats with new ones may alter the wiring system or over-use the wires because a seat has various electric connections and wiring diagram. As mentioned earlier, this may damage the wiring and related equipment or cause fire due to the overloading on the rated capacity.

In addition, replacing the seat cover may damage the electronic equipment caused by cut or pressured wire. Such a situation may also cause ventilation problems, fire, or noise.

Do not equip with a separate accessory or assistant device on the vehicle operational device.

Making the selection lever longer or equipping with an accelerator pedal and brake pedal pad may make the driver prone to make a mistake while driving.

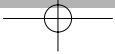
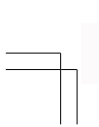
Do not install products that may decrease the driving resistance such as sticker, molding, air dam, or wind-proofing products.

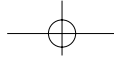
The sticker's adhesives may damage the coated surface of the vehicle. If parts of the car are drilled to attach molding and other functional parts, the area near the holes will rust and other unfamiliar sound may occur while driving. Especially if the attached parts are not fixed well, it may damage the vehicle or even cause a fatal accident.

In using audio in the vehicle, do not use illegally copied CD and DVD, which violates relevant laws. Such discs can also cause malfunction of the audio head unit and changer. In addition, such discs may also not play properly.

When installing the vehicle with unauthorized parts or modifying it in ways including the cases mentioned previously, please keep in mind that the changed parts and related problems with changed auto parts shall not be covered by warranty.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

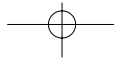




MEMO



Lined area for writing a memo.



Ignition Key, Remote Control Key 2

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Remote Control Key* and Ignition Key 2-2
- Immobilizer System* 2-5
- Key Functions 2-7
- Opening and Closing the Doors with Ignition Key 2-9
- Theft Deterrent System 2-10

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

REMOTE CONTROL KEY* AND IGNITION KEY

0 Door Lock Button

1 Lock (briefly press)

- 2 • If you press this button briefly, all doors and the tailgate are locked and the theft deterrent mode is activated.
- 3 • When the theft deterrent mode is activated, the hazard warning flashers blink twice.

9 Door Unlock/Panic Button

10 1. Unlock (briefly press)

- 11 • If you press this button briefly, all doors and the tail gate are unlocked and the theft deterrent mode is deactivated.
- 12 • When the deterrent mode is deactivated, hazard warning flashers blink once.
- 13 2. Panic function (press and hold)
- 14 • If you are in your vehicle and feel threatened while the ignition key is inserted into the key switch, you may activate the alarm to call attention. If you press this button, the warning siren will sound for approx. 27 seconds.
- 15 • The panic function will stop when any of the buttons on the remote control key is pressed.
- 16



PANIC BUTTON

(operative only when the ignition key is inserted)

Sounds intermittent buzzer for about 27 seconds

SIMULTANEOUS OPERATIONS OF ROOM LAMPS

The front and center room lamps come on for 30 seconds when the unlock button on the remote control is pressed. This function is available only when all doors are closed. The lamps immediately go off when the remote lock button is pressed.

AUTOMATIC DOOR LOCKING

If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking the door with the remote control key, all the doors will be locked automatically.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the doors and tailgate are completely locked after locking them by using the remote control key. If any of them is not locked, you may lose your vehicle and personal property.
- The doors cannot be locked by remote control if they are not closed.
- If you lose your keys, you have to replace the whole key set to prevent from theft.
- Electronic system of remote control key is vulnerable to moisture and heat. Do not put it in places where moisture and temperature is high to avoid any defect.

NOTE

Standard key does not have the remote control function.

FUNCTIONS OF IMMOBILIZER

Immobilizer Function

The immobilizer is designed to prevent the possibility of vehicle theft by allowing only authorized keys to start the engine. The same code is encrypted in the transponder inside of the key and in the Engine Control Unit (ECU). When the key is inserted and turned to the "ON" position, the ECU checks the code from the key and allows the engine to start only when the two codes are matched.

CAUTION

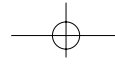
- The key and the immobilizer antenna coil should be avoided from any electronic or magnetic equipment which may interfere with the transponder. This may cause malfunctions of the immobilizer function of the key.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

REXTON II

IGNITION KEY, REMOTE CONTROL KEY

2-3



0	WHEN A REMOTE CONTROL KEY IS LOST
1	When one of the remote control keys is lost and a new remote control key is purchased, bring the other old remote control key (dual REKES type) to the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center and have it recoded. Otherwise, the old key will not work.
2	BATTERY REPLACEMENT (For Model with REKES)
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	CAUTION
14	• Use only the specified battery.
15	• Make sure that the battery is installed in correct direction.
16	



WHEN A REMOTE CONTROL KEY IS LOST

When one of the remote control keys is lost and a new remote control key is purchased, bring the other old remote control key (dual REKES type) to the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center and have it recoded. Otherwise, the old key will not work.

BATTERY REPLACEMENT (For Model with REKES)

When the operational distance noticeably decreases or the remote control does not work occasionally, replace the battery with a new one.

Battery Specifications

Model	CR 2032
Amount	One

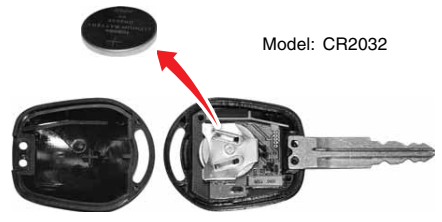
- CAUTION**
- Use only the specified battery.
 - Make sure that the battery is installed in correct direction.

Battery Replacement

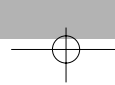
1. Unscrew two screws from the rear cover.



2. Pry off the cover by using a small flat screwdriver.



3. Remove the battery and insert a new one.

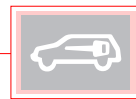


IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM*

The Immobilizer System provides an additional theft deterrent to the vehicle in which it is installed and prevents it from being started by unauthorized persons. The transponder integrated in the key and the engine control unit have the same code. When the ignition key with the integrated transponder is turned to the ON position, the ECU (Engine Control Unit) checks the crypto code of the key and, if correct, allows your vehicle to start the engine.



Immobilizer Indicator



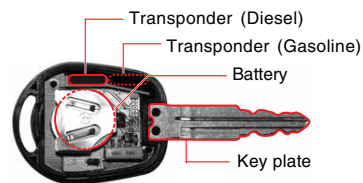
This indicator comes on when the ignition key is communicating with the engine control unit (during engine starting) and goes out after starting the engine. If this indicator blinks, it may indicate that there is something wrong in the immobilizer system. Have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

NOTE

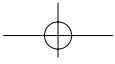
The time needed for communication between the immobilizer key and ECU can vary. When the time is very short, the immobilizer indicator does not come on.

Immobilizer Key

When the ignition key with the integrated transponder is turned to the ON position, the ECU (Engine Control Unit) checks the crypto code of the key and, if correct, allows your vehicle to start the engine.



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

• When the Transponder is Damaged

When the transponder is damaged, you must replace it with a new one and register a new code on the engine control unit at a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center. Otherwise, the engine cannot be started.

• When Your Key is Lost

When your key is lost, the encrypted code should be removed from the Engine Control Unit to avoid any vehicle theft. Please contact a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

⚠ WARNING

- In any case, the immobilizer system cannot be removed from the vehicle. If you attempt to remove and damage the system, it is impossible to start the engine. So never attempt to remove, damage or modify it.
- In addition, any remote engine starter cannot be installed to the vehicle equipped with the immobilizer system. So never install any remote engine starter.

⚠ CAUTION

When you modify your vehicle and install a remote engine starter, you may have some problems starting the engine or some fatal accidents.

In the following cases, you may be unable to start the vehicle with the immobilizer.

- ▶ When two or more immobilizer keys come into contact with (each) other(s).
- ▶ When the key is close to any device sending or receiving electromagnetic fields or waves.
- ▶ When the key is close to any electronic or electric devices such as lighting equipment, security keys or security cards.
- ▶ When the key is close to a magnetic or metal object or a battery.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the indicator remains blinking, have the immobilizer system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Avoid impact to the transponder inside of the key. The transponder can be damaged.
- With a damaged transponder, the engine cannot be started.
- The immobilizer system should be inspected, replaced, serviced, or coded by only qualified service personnel in a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- When an old code should be replaced or another key is added, please observe the process personally.

KEY FUNCTIONS

ACC Position

- Allows operation of some electrical accessories with the engine off.
- Unlock the steering wheel.
- The ignition key cannot be removed.

LOCK Position

- The ignition key can only be inserted or withdrawn.
- The steering wheel can be locked.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel

To unlock the steering wheel, insert the key and gently turn it to the ACC or ON position while slightly moving the steering wheel right and left.

Key Hole Illumination*

The illumination lamp comes on when opening the door. This lamp goes out about 10 seconds after closing the door.

Key Reminder

The buzzer will sound if the driver's door is opened while the key is left in the ignition switch on the condition that the ignition key is in the ACC or ON position.

ON Position

- The engine runs and all electrical accessories can be used.
- The steering wheel is unlocked.

START Position

- Engages the starter. After the engine starts, release the key and it will automatically return to the "ON" position.

Key Hole Illumination

From ACC to LOCK Position:

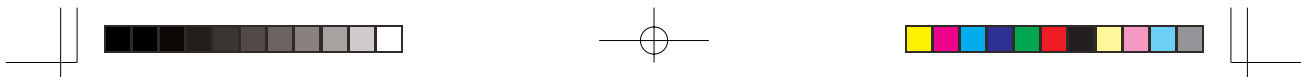
Turn the key to LOCK position from ACC position while pressing the key.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

REXTON II

IGNITION KEY, REMOTE CONTROL KEY

2-7

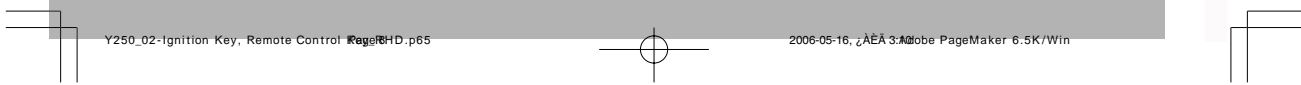
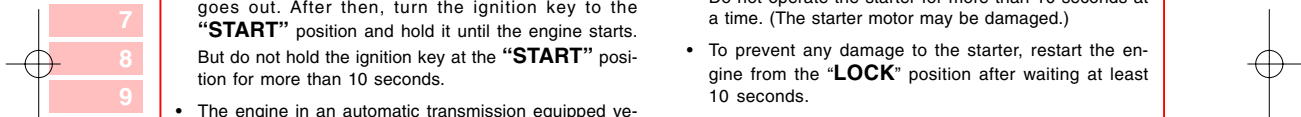


0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

CAUTIONS WHEN STARTING THE ENGINE

- To unlock the steering wheel, insert the key and gently turn it to the “**ACC**” position while slightly moving the steering wheel right and left.
- The engine in a manual transmission equipped vehicle can only be started when the clutch pedal is fully depressed.
- Diesel engine equipped vehicle: Turn the ignition key to the “**ON**” position and wait until the glow indicator goes out. After then, turn the ignition key to the “**START**” position and hold it until the engine starts. But do not hold the ignition key at the “**START**” position for more than 10 seconds.
- The engine in an automatic transmission equipped vehicle can be started only when the selector lever is at the “**P**” or “**N**” position.
- Keep the brake pedal depressed when starting the engine.
- If the engine fails to start, even if the engine does not start, turn the key back to the “**LOCK**” position and wait for 10 seconds. Then try again, before any attempt to start the engine.
- After starting the engine, let it run for approx. 2 minutes at idle speed. Do not accelerate the engine during the warming up period.
- A warning buzzer sounds when opening the driver's door with the key positioned at the “**ACC**” or “**LOCK**” position.
- Do not leave the key at the “**ACC**” or “**ON**” position when engine is not running. Otherwise, the battery could run down.
- Never press down the accelerator pedal while starting.
- Do not operate the starter for more than 10 seconds at a time. (The starter motor may be damaged.)
- To prevent any damage to the starter, restart the engine from the “**LOCK**” position after waiting at least 10 seconds.
- Never turn the key to the “**LOCK**” position or withdraw the ignition key from the ignition switch while driving. The steering wheel will be locked and you may end up with serious injuries.
- Never use any duplicated key not provided from Ssangyong.

The duplicated key might not turn back to the “**ON**” position. It may cause a fire due to an overload in the electric circuit. In addition, the engine with the immobilizer system cannot be started with the duplicated key.



OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS WITH IGNITION KEY



- ① Unlocking the door and the tailgate
- ② Locking the door and the tailgate



0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

AUTOMATIC DOOR UNLOCKING

All doors will be automatically unlocked when the engine is switched off.

To Lock the Door:

Turn the key to the lock position (toward rear of the vehicle) from driver's door or passenger's door. All doors and the tailgate will be locked.

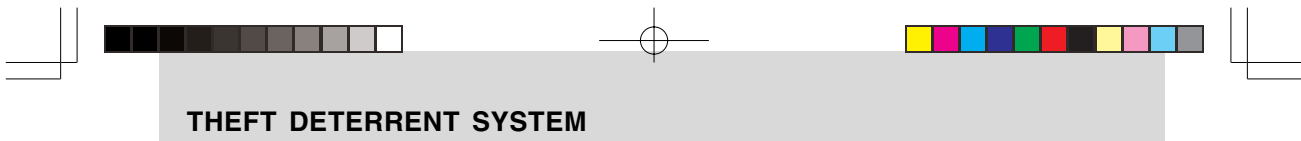
To Unlock the Door:

Turn the key to the unlock position (toward front of the vehicle) from driver's door or passenger's door. All doors and the tailgate will be unlocked.

REXTON II

IGNITION KEY, REMOTE CONTROL KEY

2-9



THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

0 ARMING THE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

1 The theft deterrent system will be armed under the following conditions:

- 2 • When all doors are locked with the remote control key, the theft deterrent mode will be activated. If the **“UNLOCK”** button on the remote control key is pressed and no door is opened within approximately 30 seconds, all doors are automatically locked again and the theft deterrent mode will be activated.
- 3
- 4
- 5 • When the theft deterrent system is armed, the emergency hazard lights blink twice.
- 6

7 **⚠ CAUTION**

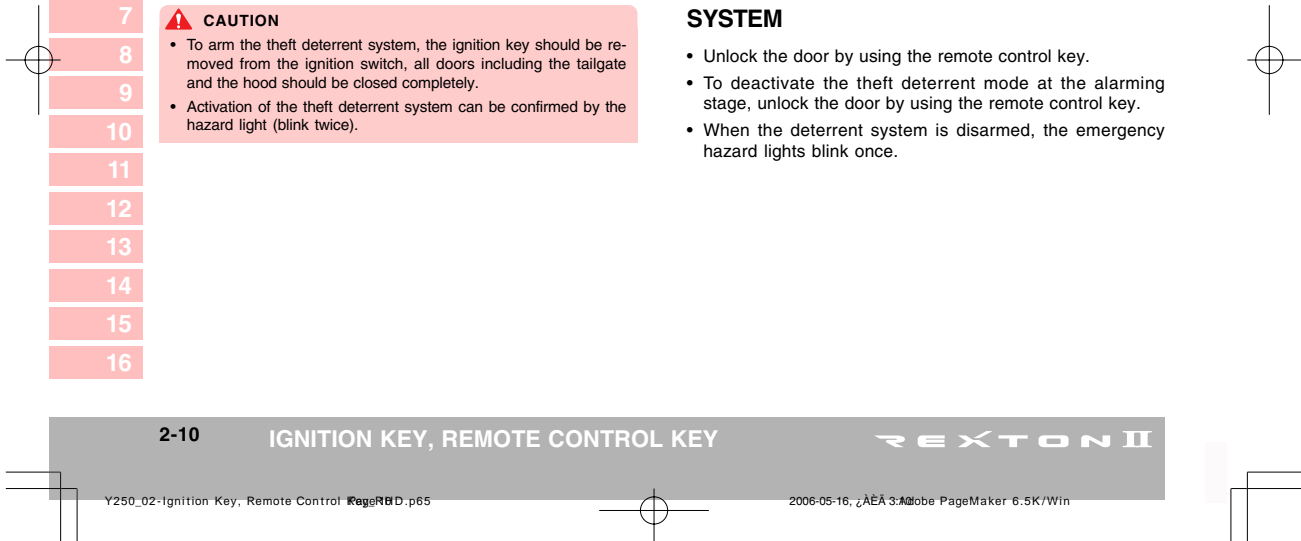
- 8 • To arm the theft deterrent system, the ignition key should be removed from the ignition switch, all doors including the tailgate and the hood should be closed completely.
- 9 • Activation of the theft deterrent system can be confirmed by the hazard light (blink twice).
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM ALARM STAGE

- The engine hood or the tailgate is opened from the outside while the deterrent system is armed, the alarm will be activated.
- When the alarm is activated, warning sound and the emergency hazard lights will be on and off every second for 27 seconds.

DISARMING THE THEFT DETERRENT SYSTEM

- Unlock the door by using the remote control key.
- To deactivate the theft deterrent mode at the alarming stage, unlock the door by using the remote control key.
- When the deterrent system is disarmed, the emergency hazard lights blink once.



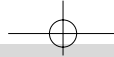
Opening and Closing

3

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Opening and Closing Devices 3-2
- Doors 3-4
- Windows 3-6
- Sunroof* 3-8
- Engine Hood 3-10
- Fuel Filler Door 3-11
- Tailgate and Tailgate Window 3-13

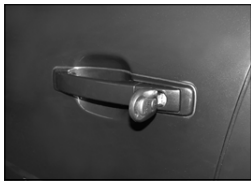
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



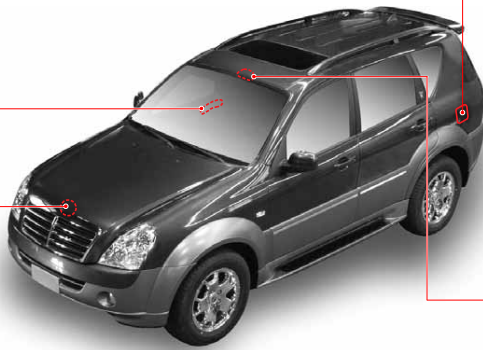
OPENING AND CLOSING DEVICES

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Door Opening Lever



Fuel Filler Door

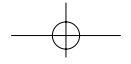


Engine Hood Safety Latch Lever

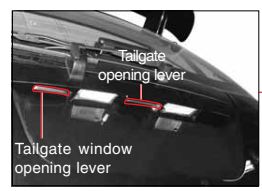


Sunroof Switch





Tailgate/Window Opening Lever



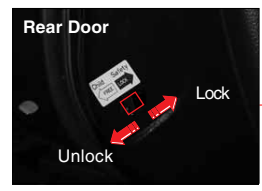
Driver's Door Windows Switch, Door Opening Lever



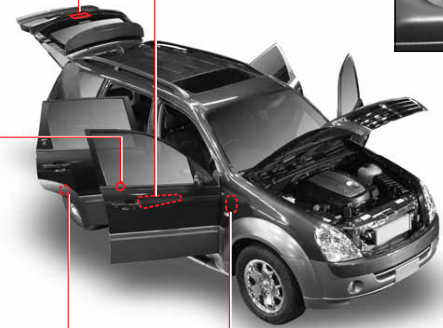
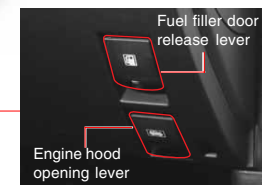
Door Lock/Unlock Knob



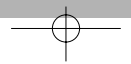
Child Safety Door Lock



Fuel Filler Door Release Lever, Engine Hood Opening Lever

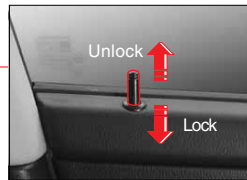


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



DOORS

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Door Lock/Unlock Knob

All doors will be locked/unlocked when moving the knob to the respective lock/unlock direction (only available at driver's and front passenger's door).

NOTE

- The passenger's door lock/unlock knob and lever have the same functions with those of the driver's door.
- The door lock/unlock knob on the rear right or rear left door can only lock or unlock its respective door.
- The door is unlocked again even when locking the door with the door lock/unlock knob while the door is open.



Child Safety Door Lock

Child safety door lock helps prevent from an accidental door open, especially when children are in the vehicle. When the child-safe lever is in the "LOCK" position, the rear door can be opened only from the outside.

WARNING

Children in rear seats can open rear doors. Move the child-safe lever to the "LOCK" position.

WINDOWS

0 DRIVER'S DOOR WINDOW SWITCH

1 ► When opening the window

- 2 • When the front of the switch is lightly pressed, the window will be lowered while the switch is pressed.
- 3 • When pressed to its end, the window will open automatically until it is fully open. If you want to stop the window while automatic lowering, lightly press the switch again or pull the switch up.

4 ► When closing the window

- 5 • When you lightly pull the switch up, the window will move up only while the switch is being operated.
- 6 • When pulling the switch up to its end, the window will be fully closed (auto-up operation (If equipped)). If you want to stop the auto-up function, pull up or gently press the switch again.

7 Driver's Door Window Switch

8 Rear Right Window Switch

9 Window Lock Switch

If the window lock switch is pressed down, passenger's and rear windows cannot be operated by their switches.

10 ⚠ WARNING

When carrying children in the rear seat, press the window lock switch to make the rear window switches inoperative. Do not allow children to play with the power window switch and rear door window switches.

11 ⚠ CAUTION

When closing the passenger's and rear windows from driver's seat, be aware of safety conditions before operation. Parts of the body can be trapped by the window.

12 Passenger's Door Window Switch

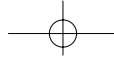
13 Central Door Lock/Unlock Switch

14 Rear Left Window Switch

3-6

OPENING AND CLOSING

REXTON II



ANTI-TRAP SYSTEM FOR DRIVER'S WINDOW

The anti-trap system enables the driver's window to automatically reverse when something is caught in the window as it is closing. When the sensor detects an obstacle, the window will be lowered immediately.

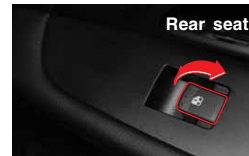
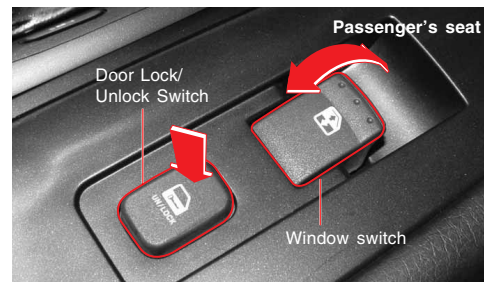
CAUTION

- The anti-trap system is operated only when the driver's window is moving up automatically by the "AUTO" switch.
- The anti-trap system does not operate where the space between the top of the glass and window frame is very close.

TIME LAG OPERATION OF WINDOW

The power window can be operated for 30 seconds even after the ignition key is turned to another position. However, this function stops immediately when a front door is opened.

Passenger's and Rear Window Switch



To move windows up or down, pull up or press the corresponding switch for the window.

WARNING

- Before operating the power windows, make sure that nothing can be trapped (such as heads, hands, or fingers) in the window.
- Make sure that passengers do not stick out their hands or heads from the vehicle while driving.
- Do not allow children to play with any switch, door lever or the gear shift lever.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

SUNROOF*

* For your safety, never operate the sunroof when the vehicle is moving.

0 SUNROOF SLIDING OPERATION

1 ► Open: 2-Step Opening

2 The sunroof automatically opens if the sunroof open/close switch is pushed shortly. However, this operation has two steps; if you push the switch to its first stop, the sunroof opens up to 5 cm ahead of end frame. If you push it again, the sunroof opens completely. When the switch is operated while the sunroof is moving, the sunroof stops sliding. (Manual sliding open: The sunroof is opened only while the sunroof switch is pressed)

6 ► Close

7 The sunroof automatically closes completely if the sunroof open/close switch is pulled down shortly when the sunroof is open. To stop it during its operation, operate the switch to any direction. (Manual sliding close: The sunroof is closed only while the sunroof switch is pressed)

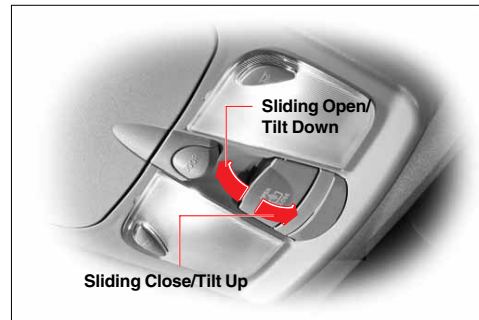
11 SUNROOF TILTING OPERATION

13 ► Tilt Up

14 The sunroof is tilted up if the sunroof open/close switch is pulled down when the sunroof is closed.

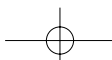
15 ► Tilt Down

16 The sunroof is tilted down if the sunroof open/close switch is pushed when the sunroof is tilted up.



⚠ CAUTION

- Even though the sunroof can be operated when the ignition key is in the ON position (the engine is not running), operating the sunroof repeatedly with the engine turned off will run down the battery. Operate the sunroof while the engine is running.
- When a desired sunroof operation is completed, release the switch. If you keep the switch operating, it could cause a malfunction.
Especially in the winter, never operate the sunroof if moving areas are iced. Wait until the areas are deiced.
- When leaving the vehicle unattended, be sure to completely close the sunroof. Otherwise, there is a great risk of vehicle theft. Or, the interior of the vehicle will be wet when it rains or snows.



ANTI-PINCH FUNCTION

To prevent any body parts from being trapped by the auto-closing sunroof, an Anti-Pinch Function automatically opens the sunroof when an object is trapped.

CAUTION

- This safety function is available for the sliding sunroof close.
- The Anti-Pinch Function is deactivated just before the sunroof closes.

WARNING

- When operating the sunroof, be aware of safety conditions before operation. Parts of the body can be trapped.
- Do not stick any part of your body out of the sunroof.

WIND BUFFETING

When you drive this vehicle with the window or sunroof open at a certain position, you may feel some pressure upon your ears or hear some noises similar to those from a helicopter.

This happens because of an influx in air through the window or sunroof and its resonance effect. If this happens, adjust by opening the window or sunroof.

BATTERY DISCHARGE OR POWER FAILURE WHILE OPERATING SUNROOF

If the sunroof is stopped midway due to a discharged battery or power failure, you need to re-calibrate the starting point of the sunroof. In addition, the following cases need the re-calibration.

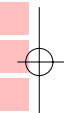
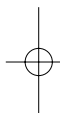
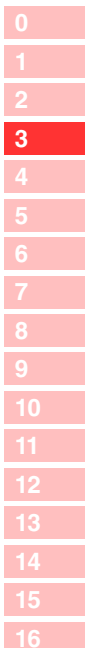
- The sunroof does not completely close or open by operating the switch once.
- The sunroof slides back to close. But the operation does not stop even after a complete close and tilts up the sunroof.
- The opening gap remarkably decreases for the sliding open or tilt up.
- Operation of the sunroof switch does not do anything or work properly.

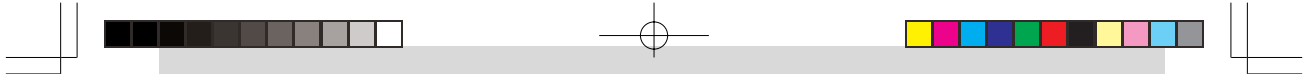
RE-CALIBRATING THE SUNROOF STARTING POINT

- Close the sunroof completely by using the sunroof open/close switch (sliding close).
- When the sunroof stops while the sunroof is partially opened, completely tilt it up using the sunroof open/close switch.

NOTE

When the sunroof is completely opened with the sunroof switch and the switch is operated to the "OPEN" direction for more than 5 seconds, the sunroof cannot completely be either closed or opened by operating the switch once. The sunroof will be moving only when the switch is being operated. When this happens, re-calibrate the beginning point of the sunroof to reactivate the one touch button.





ENGINE HOOD

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

1. To open the engine hood, pull the release knob located on the lower left side of the steering wheel to unlatch the engine hood.
2. Slightly lift up the engine hood and raise up the safety latch lever with your fingers. Then, completely lift up the engine hood.

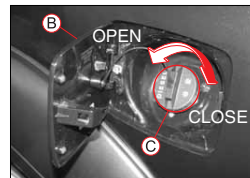


- ⚠ WARNING**
- When you open the hood while the engine is running, extra caution is needed to avoid any injuries by the moving parts in the engine compartment.
 - Before driving, try to pull up the front edge of the hood to check that the hood is securely latched.

FUEL FILLER DOOR



1. Open the fuel filler door (B) by pulling the release lever (A) located on the lower left side of the steering wheel.
2. Open the fuel filler cap (C) by turning it counterclockwise.
3. After refueling, tighten the fuel filler cap by turning it clockwise until you hear clicking sounds. Then close the fuel filler lid (B) properly until it latches.



⚠ WARNING

- Always stop the engine when refueling. Use only the designated fuel and low sulfur diesel.
- When refueling,
 - No smoking.
 - No sparking material.
- No naked flame.
- If you use inappropriate grade fuel or put improper fuel additives into the fuel tank, the engine and catalytic converter may seriously be damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

- Fuel damages paintwork. If fuel spills onto paintwork, immediately wash the affected area with cold water.
- The fuel filler door may not open in cold weather. Gently tap the fuel filler door to open.



0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

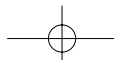
15

16

REXTON II

OPENING AND CLOSING

3-11



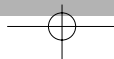
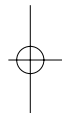
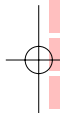
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

⚠ WARNING
Gasoline vapor is highly flammable.
It burns violently and that can cause very bad injuries.
When refueling,
• Switch off engine.
• No smoking.
• No naked flame.
• No sparking material.

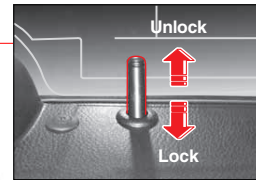
⚠ CAUTION
Gasoline damages paintwork.
If gasoline spills onto paintwork wash with cold water immediately.

⚠ CAUTION
For correct octane rating setting and other use of gasoline (ex. Leaded), consult your Ssangyong Dealer.

⚠ CAUTION
Engine and exhaust system will be damaged.
• Do not use leaded fuel to the vehicle for unleaded fuel.
• Use the fuel with specified or higher Research Octane Number recommended for your country by Ssangyong.
It is not covered by warranty.



TAILGATE AND TAILGATE WINDOW



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases are poisonous. Do not run the engine with the tailgate or tailgate window open to avoid exhaust gas in the cabin. Cargo can fall out of an open tailgate while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in an unexpected accident. Do not travel with the tailgate or tailgate window open.

Opening the Tailgate



To open the tailgate, unlock the tailgate and pull the tailgate opening lever up.
To close the tailgate, lower it by holding the inside handle to a certain level first, then close it.

Opening the Tailgate Window

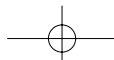


To unlock the tailgate window, unlock the tailgate and pull the left lever up. Open the tailgate window by pulling up the outer window grip.

REXTON II

OPENING AND CLOSING

3-13

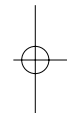
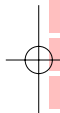


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



CAUTIONS WHEN OPENING/CLOSING DOORS

- Do not allow children to play with any switch, door lever and the gear shift.
- Before operating the power windows, doors, tailgate and fuel filler door, make sure that nothing can be trapped (such as heads, hands, or fingers).
- Make sure that the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door are completely closed before driving.
- When a child is on rear seat, use the child safety functions to avoid any unwanted and dangerous opening of doors.
- Parts of the human body can be trapped in the window or sunroof and can be struck by passing objects. Do not stick hands, heads or anything else out of the openings.



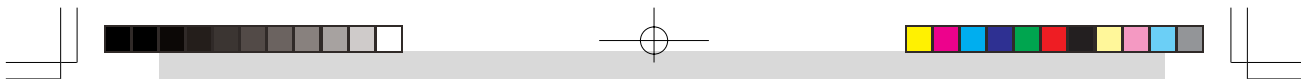
Interior Switches

4

TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Interior Switches	4-2	● Heated Glass Switch	4-24
● Light Switch	4-4	● Hazard Warning Flasher Switch	4-25
● Wiper and Washer Switch	4-8	● HDC (Hill Descent Control) Switch*	4-26
● Rain Sensing Wiper*	4-9	● ESP (Electronic Stability Program) Switch and ESP System*	4-28
● Wiper and Washer Switch	4-10	● Remote Audio Controls & Gear Shift Button (A/T) On Steering Wheel	4-30
● Cruise Control Switch* (For Auto T/M)	4-12	● Switches in Center Console	4-31
● Switch Panel on Driver's Door Trim	4-16	● 4-Wheel Drive System	4-32
● Outside Rearview Mirror Control Switch	4-17	● Switches in Overhead Console, Room Lamp Switch	4-35
● Multi-Station*	4-18		
● Time and Date Display	4-19		
● Audio Play Using the USB Flash Drive	4-20		
● Listening To Music with External Audio Device	4-23		

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



INTERIOR SWITCHES

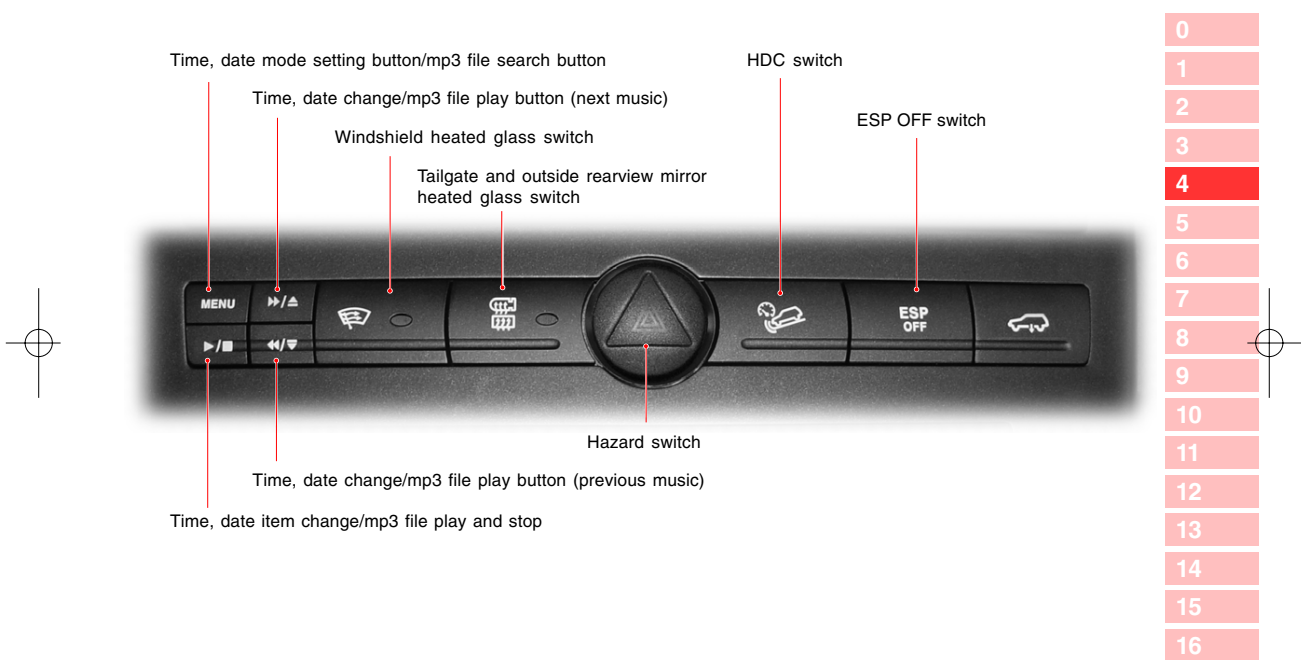
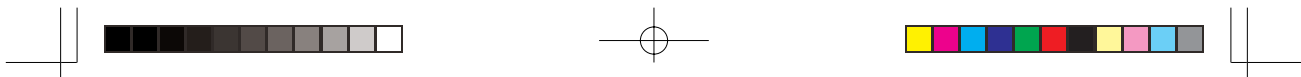
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



4-2

INTERIOR SWITCHES

REXTON II

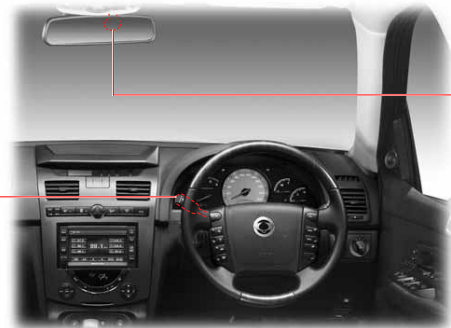


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

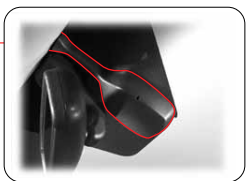
Light Switch



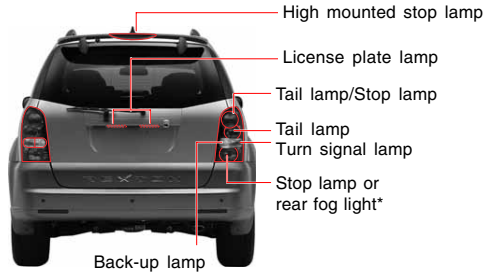
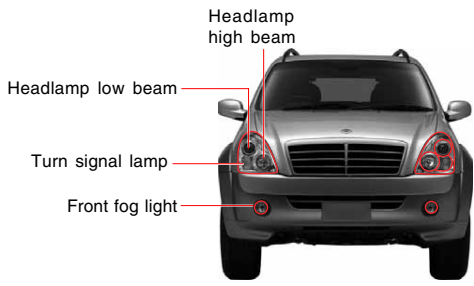
You can turn the lights on and off (headlamps, tail lamps, license plate lamp, turn signal lamps, fog lights) with this switch.



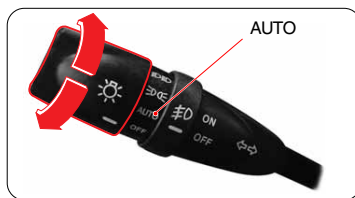
Automatic Light & Rain Sensor*



This senses the ambient illumination intensity to determine the timing for turning the headlamps and tail lamps on or off automatically when the light switch is set to "AUTO" (including rain sensing function).



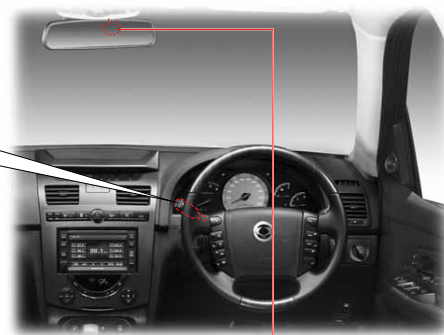
AUTOMATIC LIGHT*



The auto light and rain sensor senses the ambient illumination intensity to determine the timing for turning the headlamps and tail lamps on or off automatically when the light switch is set to “AUTO”.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not clean the area where the auto-light and rain sensor is installed with detergent or wax.
- On a foggy, snowy, rainy, or cloudy day, be sure to use manual mode. The turning on or off time of the lamps varies depending on the climate, season, or circumstances.
- Any aftermarket tanning film or spray may cause the lighting system to malfunction.
- Ssangyong recommends you to use this device restrictively around only a sunrise or sunset.
- Usually turn the headlamps or tail lights on or off manually.
- Turn on the headlamps manually when passing through a dark area such as a tunnel.
- On a gloomy day, do not rely on this automatic function. But turn the head or tail lights on or off manually.
- When the switch is turned to the “AUTO” position, room, tail, and head lights might blink for a very short time. It is a normal phenomenon recognizing the automatic setting.



Automatic Light & Rain Sensor*

This senses the ambient illumination intensity to determine the timing for turning the headlamps and tail lamps on or off automatically when the light switch is set to “AUTO” (integrated with rain sensor).

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not shake and impact the sensor. It may not work properly.
- The automatic light function may not operate properly when the vehicle is driving on the rugged road due to the vibration.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

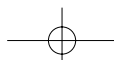
12

13

14

15

16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Battery Saver (Automatically turns off the lights)

To avoid discharging the battery, if the tail lamps are on after the ignition key is removed, a buzzer will sound to alert the driver when the driver's door is opened. The tail lamps will automatically turn off when the door is closed. To turn the tail lamps on again, insert the ignition key into the ignition switch. Or, turn the light switch to the "OFF" position and then to the "ON" position.



Light Switch

 (Headlamps ON)

Head-, side-marker, tail, license plate, front fog (with front fog light switch ON), and instrument cluster lamps come on.

 (Tail lamps ON)

Side-marker, tail, license plate, front fog (with front fog light switch ON), and instrument cluster lamps come on.

AUTO (Automatic light ON)

Head- and tail lamps automatically turn on or off based upon the intensity of the sunlight analyzed by the automatic light sensor.

OFF (Lights OFF)

All lights are off.

Headlight Leveling Switch

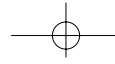


With the low beam switched on, adjust the aiming angle of headlights to suit the vehicle load.

- To lower the aiming angle, rotate the switch downward.
- To raise the aiming angle, rotate the switch upward.

NOTE

According to load condition, adjust the aiming angle of headlights.



Headlamp High Beam

To turn on the headlamp high beam, push the lever towards the instrument cluster with the headlamp low beam on. The headlamp high beam indicator (≡D) in the instrument cluster comes on when the headlamp high beam is turned on.

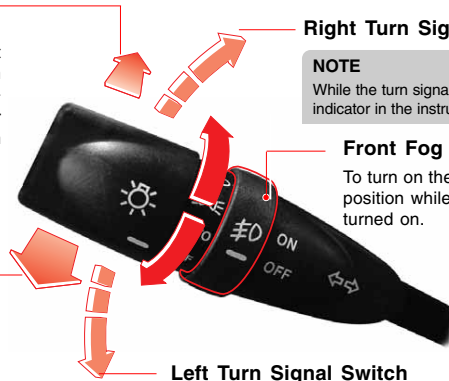
Right Turn Signal Switch

NOTE

While the turn signal lamp is turned on, the turn signal indicator in the instrument cluster blinks.

Front Fog Light Switch

To turn on the fog lights, turn this switch to ON position while the tail lamps or headlamps are turned on.



Left Turn Signal Switch

Rear Fog Light Switch



To turn on the rear fog light, push the rear fog light switch while the front fog light switch is turned on. To turn it off, push the switch again. The rear fog lights are automatically turned off when turning off the light switch or the front fog light switch. Therefore, to turn on the rear fog lights, push the rear fog light switch again after turning on the light switch and the front fog light switch.

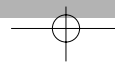
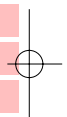
Passing

Regardless of the position of the light switch, if you hold the lever toward the steering wheel, the headlights are on high beam during the hold. The high beam indicator also illuminates on the instrument cluster during the hold.

WARNING

Driving with high beam headlamps disturbs the approaching vehicle's visibility for safe driving. Use the high beam headlamp only during very dark situations when it is very hard to see the road.

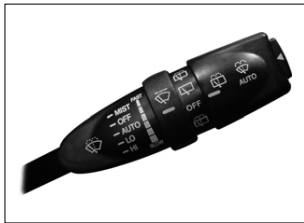
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

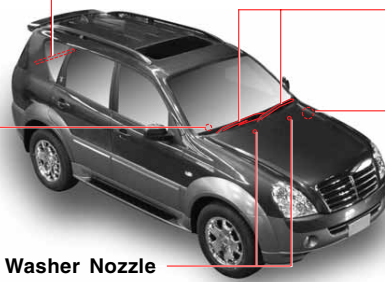
Wiper and Washer Switch



Rear Wiper

Front Wiper

Washer Nozzle



Wiper Blade

If the windshield cannot be cleaned properly due to worn wiper blades, replace them with new ones. Refer to "Service and Maintenance" section in this manual.

Washer Fluid Reservoir

Frequently check the washer fluid level and add the specified product as needed. In winter, use only the specified washer liquid for winter season.

CAUTION

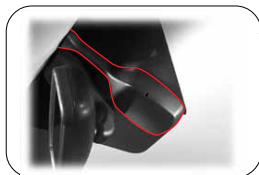
- If you use plain water as washer fluid, it will freeze during the winter and damage the washer fluid reservoir and motor. Use only the specified washer fluid.
- Avoid any spills of washer fluid on the engine or body paint of your vehicle during replenishment



RAIN SENSING WIPER*

When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, this sensor detects the amount of rain, turns on the wiper, and controls the intermittent wiper intervals.

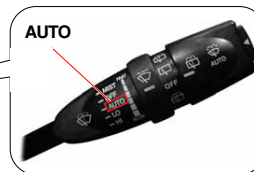
Rain and Auto Light Sensor



It controls the wiping speed by detecting the amount of rain drops.



Wiper AUTO Position



CAUTION

- When the wiper switch is in the "AUTO" position, the wiper will operate once if the initial engine start is made. This may wear the wiper blades prematurely (especially in winter). Therefore, other than rainy days, set the switch to the "OFF" position. In winter, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen and are not stuck to the windshield. Otherwise, this may cause some damage to the wiper motor.
- If you use only the wipers when the glass is dry, this could scratch the glass and wear the wiper blades prematurely. Use the wiper with the washer when the glass is dry.
- Turn the wiper switch to the "OFF" position before any car wash to avoid unwanted operation of the wipers.
- When it does not rain, turn the wiper switch into the "OFF" position.

WARNING

When you clean the windshield over the sensor with damp clothes, the wiper may operate suddenly. It could cause serious injury. Make sure to place the wiper switch and ignition switch to the "OFF" position when not in use.

NOTE

- When the light switch is in the "AUTO" position, head lights come on if the rain sensor detects any rain.
- The speed of the wipers becomes a little faster when it is dark enough to turn on the automatic lights.
- When the ignition key is in the "ON" position, the wiper will automatically operate once if the wiper switch is turned from the "OFF" to the "AUTO" position. But the wiper will not operate again to prevent any damage to the window even though the wiper switch is turned from the "OFF" position to the "AUTO" position.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

INTERIOR SWITCHES

4-9

WIPER AND WASHER SWITCH

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Front Wiper Switch

MIST

The windshield wipers can be operated only when you hold the switch to the "MIST" position. The lever will return to the "OFF" position when released.

OFF

Stop the operation.

AUTO

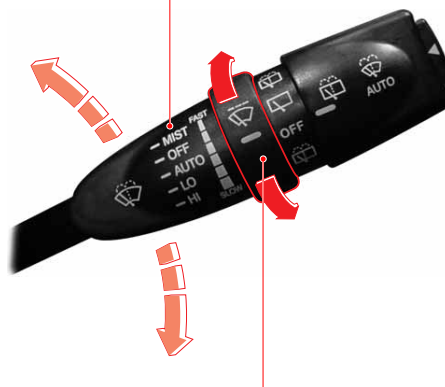
Operates automatically according to the vehicle speed or amount of rain.

LO

Continuous wipe, slow operation

HI

Continuous wipe, fast operation

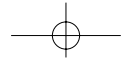


Front Automatic Wiping Speed Control Switch

The interval of wiper swings can be adjusted by twisting the control knob upward or downward when the windshield wiper switch is in the AUTO position.

Fast: Fast interval

Slow: Slow interval



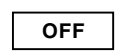
Rear Wiper Switch



When the switch is fully turned, washer fluid will be sprayed onto the rear window glass and the wiper will also operate. When the switch is released, it will stop in the Rear Wiper Operation mode and only the wiper will keep operating.



Rear wiper operation



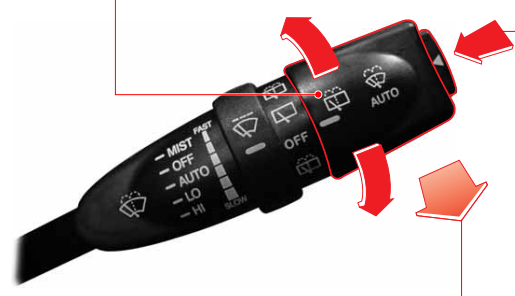
Rear wiper stops



When the switch is fully turned, washer fluid will be sprayed onto the rear window glass and the wiper will also operate. When the switch is released, it will return to the "OFF" position and turn off the wiper and washer.

Front Auto Washer Switch

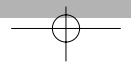
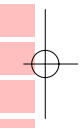
When the front wiper switch is off and this switch is pressed, washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will automatically operate 4 times. Then, the fluid will be sprayed again and the wiper will automatically operate 3 times.



Wiper and Washer Coupled Operation

Pull the lever briefly (for less than 0.6 seconds): One wiping cycle with washer spray
Pull and hold the lever for more than 0.6 seconds: Three wiping cycles with washer spray
While being held down, the wiper and washer will keep working.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



CRUISE CONTROL SWITCH* (FOR AUTO T/M)

CRUISE CONTROL



The cruise control is an automatic speed control system that maintains a desired driving speed without using the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed must be greater than 36 km/h to engage the cruise control. This feature is especially useful for motorway driving.

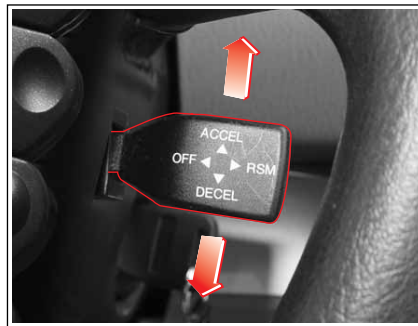
CAUTION

Improper use of the cruise control could be dangerous.

- Do not use on winding roads.
- Do not use in heavy traffic.
- Do not use on slippery, wet roads.

This could result in a loss of control, collision, and/or personal injuries.

Setting a Desired Speed



1. To operate the cruise control, accelerate to your desired speed using the accelerator pedal over 36 km/h.
2. When the desired speed is reached, push up the ACCEL switch of the cruise control lever or push down the DECEL switch for 1 second per one switching and then release the accelerator pedal slowly.
3. Now, the vehicle is cruised by this system with the set speed.
4. And you can set to other vehicle speeds again with above steps after an accelerator pedal intervention during the cruise control running.

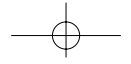
Accelerating with the Cruise Control System

- While the cruise control system is running
 1. Push up the ACCEL switch of the cruise control lever and hold it until the desired speed is reached without an accelerator pedal intervention.
 2. When the desired speed is reached, release the lever.
- While the cruise control system is not running
 1. Accelerate using the accelerator pedal over 36 km/h.
 2. Push up the ACCEL switch of the cruise control lever and hold it.
 3. And then release the accelerator pedal slowly.
 4. When the desired speed is reached, release the lever.
- Tap-up while the cruise control system is running
 1. Push up the ACCEL switch of the cruise control lever less than 0.5 second per one switching while the cruise control system is running. This is a tap-up switching.
 2. When you operate a tap-up switching, the vehicle is accelerated for 1.3 km/h over the previous set speed.
 3. If you want to accelerate for 13 km/h, operate the tap-up switching ten times without accelerating with the cruise control system.

Decelerating with the Cruise Control System

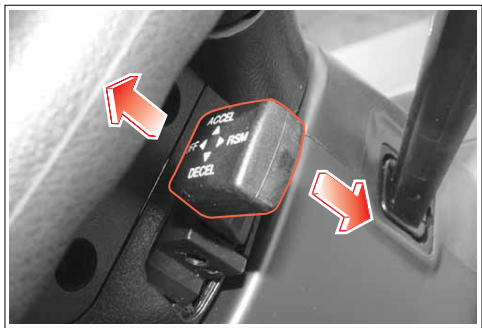
- While the cruise control system is running
 1. Push down the DECEL switch of the cruise control lever and hold it until the desired speed is reached without a brake pedal intervention. But the cruise control system cannot maintain the cruise function at less than 34 km/h.
 2. When the desired speed is reached, release the lever.
- When the cruise control system is not running
 1. Push down the DECEL switch of the cruise control lever and hold it.
 2. And then release the accelerator pedal slowly.
 3. When the desired speed is reached, release the lever. But the cruise control system cannot maintain the cruise function at less than 34 km/h.
- Tap-down while the cruise control system is running
 1. Push down the DECEL switch of the cruise control lever less than 0.5 second per one switching while the cruise control system is running. This is a tap-down switching.
 2. When you operate a tap-down switching, the vehicle is decelerated for 1 km/h below the previous set speed.
 3. If you want to decelerate for 10 km/h, operate the tap-down switching ten times without the brake pedal intervention.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Recovery of Set Speed



Even if the cruise control is canceled, the previous set cruise speed can be recovered by pushing toward the RSM (resume) switch of the cruise control lever when the current vehicle speed is over 36 km/h without an acceleration intervention. But if you turn off the ignition switch, the memorized set speed is cleared and you cannot recover the previous set speed.

CAUTION
The resume position should only be used if the driver is fully aware of this speed and wishes to resume this particular speed.

Normal Cancellation of the Cruise Control

The cruise control system will be canceled when one or more items of the following conditions are applied;

1. When the brake pedal is depressed.
2. When the cruising speed is downed less than 34 km/h.
3. When the off switch is operated by pulling rearward the cruise control lever.
4. When ABD is activated.

And the cruise control system can be operated again in driving state.

CAUTION
Keep the main cruise control switch in the neutral position when not using the cruise control.

Abnormal Cancellation of the Cruise Control

1. When the rapid deceleration is applied without braking.
2. When the rapid acceleration is applied without acceleration pedal intervention.
3. When the cruise control lever is failed.
4. When the brake switch and the brake light switch input signal are implausible.

And the cruise control system cannot be operated again in driving state. In this case, you should stop the vehicle, and turn off the ignition switch and then turn it on again. After you do that, you can use the cruise control system again. But if the cruise control system isn't recovered, you should contact a Ssangyong Dealer for diagnosis of the cruise control system.

CAUTION

Abnormal changes of the selector lever can damage the engine. Do not move the shift lever to Neutral while driving at the set speed. Automatic transmission damage may result.

CAUTION

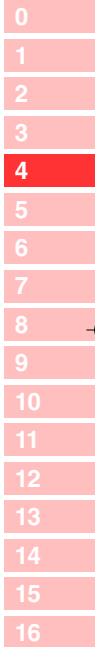
- The speed that has been set may not be maintained on uphill or downhill slopes.
- The speed may drop to less than the set speed on a steep uphill grade. The accelerator must be used if you want to maintain that speed.
- The speed may increase to more than the set speed on a steep downhill grade. When the speed increases too much, turn off the cruise control.

Using the Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends on the speed, load, and the steepness of the hill.

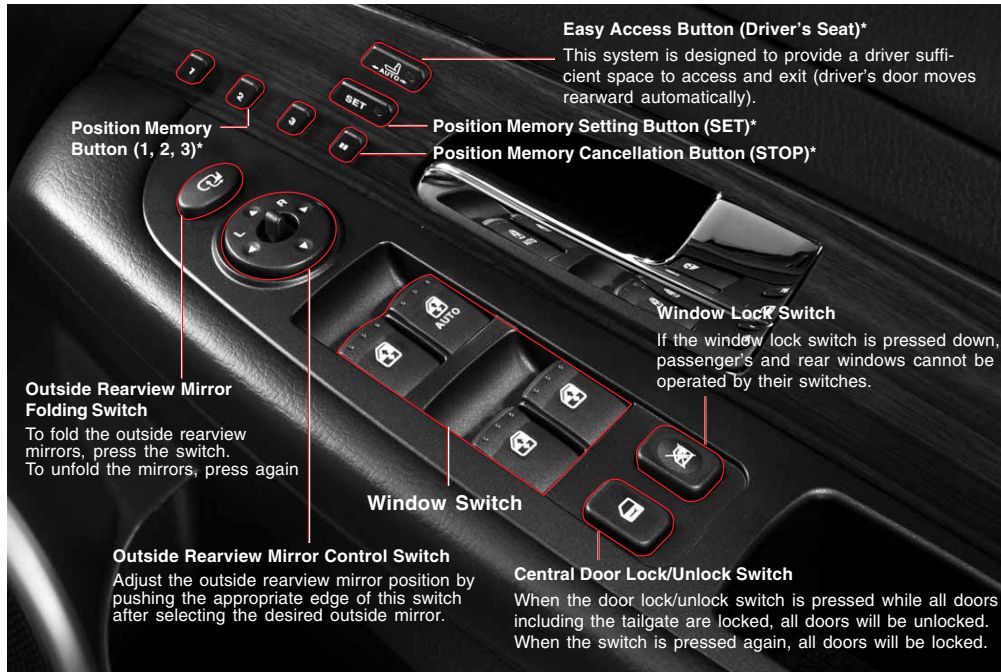
When going up steep hills, you may have to press the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed. When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down.

Applying the brake takes you out of the cruise control.



SWITCH PANEL ON DRIVER'S DOOR TRIM

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Easy Access Button (Driver's Seat)*

This system is designed to provide a driver sufficient space to access and exit (driver's door moves rearward automatically).

Position Memory Button (1, 2, 3)*

Position Memory Setting Button (SET)*

Position Memory Cancellation Button (STOP)*

Outside Rearview Mirror Folding Switch

To fold the outside rearview mirrors, press the switch. To unfold the mirrors, press again

Outside Rearview Mirror Control Switch

Adjust the outside rearview mirror position by pushing the appropriate edge of this switch after selecting the desired outside mirror.

Window Lock Switch

If the window lock switch is pressed down, passenger's and rear windows cannot be operated by their switches.

Window Switch

Central Door Lock/Unlock Switch

When the door lock/unlock switch is pressed while all doors including the tailgate are locked, all doors will be unlocked. When the switch is pressed again, all doors will be locked.

OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR CONTROL SWITCH

Outside Rearview Mirror Control

1. Select the driver side mirror (R) or the passenger side mirror (L) with the mirror selection switch.
2. Adjust the outside rearview mirror by pushing the appropriate edge of the switch.

Outside Rearview Mirror Folding Switch

To fold the outside rearview mirrors, press the switch.
To unfold the mirrors, press again.



Mirror Selection Switch

- ▶ "R": Driver side mirror
- ▶ "L": Passenger side mirror

Aiming Switch

Adjust the selected mirror up, down, left, or right by pressing the corresponding edges of the switch to get a desired view.



⚠ WARNING

Do not put any tinting film on the door glasses of the front seats. Otherwise, your visibility will decrease.

⚠ CAUTION

- You can fold and unfold the mirrors within 30 seconds after the ignition is turned to OFF. However, this function is overridden when any of front doors is opened with the ignition switch OFF.
- Do not fold or unfold the outside rearview mirrors manually. It may cause a malfunction of the mirror folding system.
- If you directly spray high-pressured water to the electric remote-controlled outside mirrors, this may cause some malfunctions in the mirror system.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

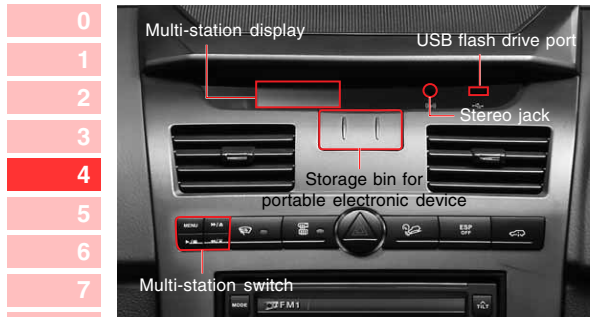
16

REXTON II

INTERIOR SWITCHES

4-17

MULTI-STATION*



0 Multi-station display

1 Searching the music file

2 Time/Date Display Mode

3 Selecting the time/date adjustment mode



4 Music File Play Mode

5 Playing and stopping the music file

6 Time/Date Display Mode

7 Selecting the time or date

8 Music File Play Mode

9 Playing the previous/next music file, Forwarding and Reversing

10 Time/Date Display Mode

11 Adjusting the time/date

USB Flash Drive Port*

You can connect the external USB flash drive to this port to play the music files (MP3, OGG, WMA).

Stereo Jack*

You can hear the music through the speakers on your vehicle by connecting the external audio device (MP3 player, CD player etc.) to this jack.

Multi-Station Display

This display shows time/date or music file play screen according to the current mode.

CAUTION

- Use only smooth cloth to clean this display window. Otherwise, the display window could be scratched.
- When the room temperature is high or low, this display window may be dimmed or discolored.
- Some USB flash drive may not be compatible with the multi-station audio file play system.

CAUTION

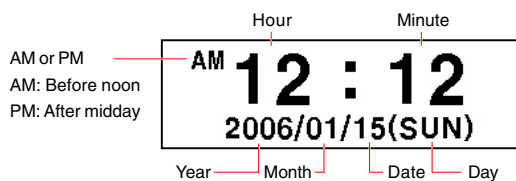
Cautions for Storage Bin (for Portable Electronic Device)



You can put your portable electronic device such as a cellular phone or MP3 player into the storage bin. This location is convenient place to connect the electronic devices with the stereo jack in the multi-station. However, some devices cannot put into the storage bin due to the size or shape. Be careful not to damage the surface of the device when you use this storage bin.

TIME AND DATE DISPLAY

The time and date are displayed in the multi-station display window.



Adjusting the Time and Date

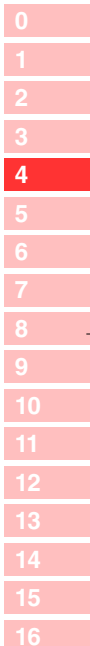
1. Press and hold **[MENU]** button on the multi-station switch panel with the time and date displayed. It is switched to the time and date adjustment mode and the selected item is blinking.
2. Press **[>/<]** button to move to the desired position (hour, minutes, month, date or year).
3. Press **[+/-]** button or **[4/5]** button to change the time and date.
4. Press **[MENU]** button after adjustment to finish the adjustment mode. Now, the display shows the changed time/date.

NOTE

The display resumes Time/Date display mode if you do not press any button within few seconds in Time/Date adjustment mode.

Time Setting Using the Preset Function

1. Press and hold **[MENU]** button on the multi-station switch panel with the time and date displayed.
2. Press **[>/<]** button to move to the minutes section (Minute section start to blink).
3. Press and hold any of **[+/-]** and **[4/5]** buttons.
4. If the minutes section displays 00-29, it is reset to "00". If the minutes section displays 30-59, the hour is increased by 1 and the minute is reset to "00".
5. The clock starts to run immediately after releasing the button.
6. Press **[MENU]** button after adjustment to finish the adjustment mode. Now, the display shows the changed time/date.

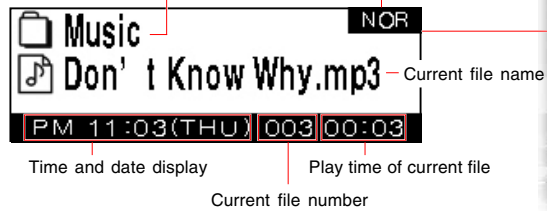


AUDIO PLAY USING THE USB FLASH DRIVE

The multi-station can detect and play the music files (MP3, OGG, WMA) in the USB flash drive when connecting it into the USB flash drive port.

MULTI-STATION DISPLAY WINDOW

Current folder name Current play mode



USB flash drive



No Playing File

NO DATA

This message is displayed when there is no accessible audio file in the USB flash drive.

USB Flash Drive Connected

INSERT MEMORY

This message is displayed in the multi-station display window when pressing (▶/■) button while the USB flash drive is not connected to the USB flash drive port.

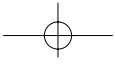
CAUTION

- Only MP3, WMA and OGG file formats can be played in the multi-station audio file play system.
- The system may not recognize some audio files due to the information error even though the file format is playable.
- If the message "INSERT MEMORY" is displayed even while the USB flash drive is connected to the USB flash drive port, remove the USB flash drive and then connect it again.
- Some USB flash drive may not be compatible with the multi-station audio file play system.
- This system does not recognize the hard disc type USB flash drive.
- The vehicle with AV system has a different operating instructions for playing the music file through the USB flash drive. Please refer to the separate AV operating manual for detailed information.

4-20

INTERIOR SWITCHES

REXTON II



Search the audio files (briefly press) Set the playing sequence and repeat function (press and hold)		Play the next music (briefly press) Go to the previous file (press and hold)
Play/Stop the audio file Move to other folder (file search mode)		Play the previous music or go to the beginning of the current file (briefly press) Go to the next file (press and hold)

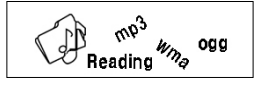
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

Playing Audio Files

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB flash drive port.



3. The multi-station display shows the message of USB flash drive reading as below. (It takes longer time if the memory capacity is big.)



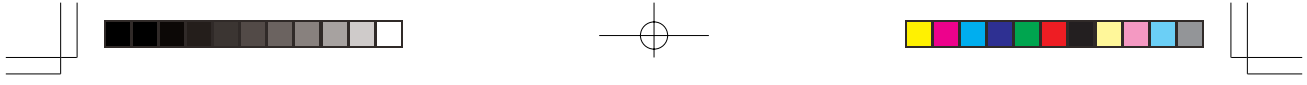
2. Press the AUX button of the audio system to display "AUX IN" in the audio display window.



4. The system starts to play the audio file after reading the USB flash drive.

5. The next file is played when pressing (next) button briefly. The current file is played from the beginning again or the previous file is played when pressing (previous) button briefly.

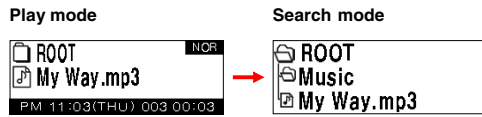
6. While a file is played, press and hold the (fast forward) or (fast back) button to fast forward or back to the desired file.



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Selecting Audio File

1. To go to file search mode while playing a music in USB flash drive, press **[MENU]** button briefly. The multi-station display window is switched as below.



2. Select the desired file by pressing **[▶/△]** button or **[◀/▽]** button in the file search mode.

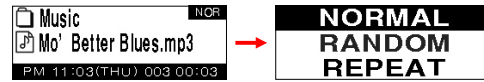
3. To move to the desired folder, press **[▶/△]** button when the folder is highlighted. It moves to the parent folder if you press and hold **[▶/△]** button.

4. Select a file and press **[▶/△]** button to play it.



Setting Playing Sequence and Repeat Function

1. When you press and hold **[MENU]** button while a file is played, the system is switched to the playing sequence and repeat setting mode.



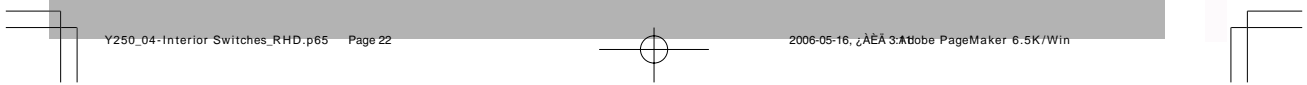
2. In the playing sequence and repeat setting mode, press **[▶/△]** button or **[◀/▽]** button to select the desired playing sequence or repeat function.



3. In the playing sequence and repeat setting mode, press **[▶/△]** button or **[◀/▽]** button to select the desired playing sequence or repeat function.

- NORMAL (displayed "NOR"): Sequential play
- RANDOM (displayed "RND"): Random play
- REPEAT (displayed "RPT"): Repeat the currently played file

4. After selecting the desired playing sequence or repeat function, press **[▶/△]** or **[MENU]** button to apply the changed setting.



LISTENING TO MUSIC WITH EXTERNAL AUDIO DEVICE

1. Connect the external audio device to the stereo jack (AUX jack).



2. When you press AUX button on the audio system, "AUX IN" is displayed on the audio display window and multi-station display window.



AUX IN
AM 2:30(TUE)

"AUX IN" in multi-station display window

3. When you operate the external audio device, you can hear the music through the speakers on your vehicle.

MODE CHANGE

Press **MENU** button to change the mode when the USB flash drive or the external audio device is connected to the USB flash drive port or to the stereo jack.

However, it cannot be switched to the external audio device play mode while the audio file in the USB flash drive is being played.

It can be switched to the external audio device mode only after stopping the operation of USB flash drive.

By Pressing **MENU** Button, the Mode Is Changed As Below

Searching the files in the USB flash drive

ROOT
Music
My Way.mp3

Playing the music through the external audio device.

AUX IN
AM 2:30(TUE)

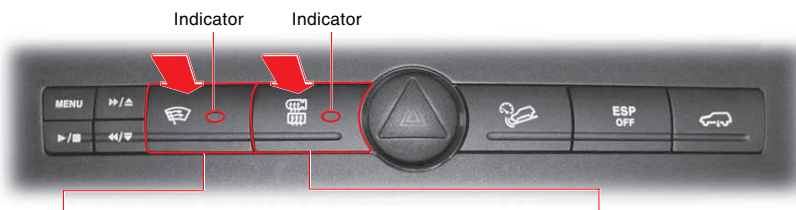
Clock display

AM 12:12
2006/01/15(SUN)

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

HEATED GLASS SWITCH

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Windshield Heated Glass Switch

- Press this switch to turn on the windshield heated glass. It will operate for about 12 minutes.
- Press the switch again to stop the operation.
- Use this to prevent the windshield wiper blades from being frozen.
- The indicator in the switch comes on when in use.

Tailgate and Outside Rearview Mirror Heated Glass Switch

- Press this switch to turn on the tailgate and outside rearview mirror heated glasses. It will operate for about 12 minutes.
- Press the switch again to stop the operation.
- This switch is designed to defrost or defog the tailgate glass and outside rearview mirrors.
- The heated glass will operate for about 6 minutes when the switch is pressed again within 12 minutes after completion of its first operation cycle.
- The indicator in the switch comes on when in use.

Windshield heated glass

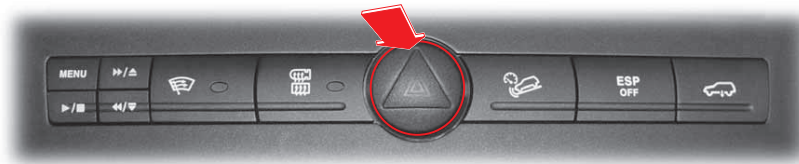


Tailgate heated glass



Outside rearview mirror heated glass

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER SWITCH



Hazard Warning Flasher Switch

- To turn on the hazard warning flashers, push the hazard warning flasher switch.
- Use the hazard warning flasher to warn other drivers when you stop or park under emergency conditions.

WARNING

Do not leave the flashers on for an extended period of time. Battery could be discharged.



0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

INTERIOR SWITCHES

4-25

HDC (HILL DESCENT CONTROL) SWITCH*

0 HDC? HDC stands for Hill Descent Control. When traveling down steep grades, this function allows you to travel at a low speed without any depression of the brake pedal. This convenient function is for only driving down steep grades. Therefore do not use this function for anything other than driving down steep hills.

2 HDC Switch

3 When this button is pressed once, HDC is ready for use. The green HDC indicator on the instrument cluster comes on. When the button is pressed again, HDC is deactivated and the indicator goes off.



8 The HDC Indicator

9 Green light on: HDC is ready for use (by pressing the HDC switch).

10 Green light blinking: HDC is being applied.

11 Red light on: the HDC system is overheated or malfunctioning.



Depressing the Accelerator or Brake Pedal while HDC is Being Applied

If you depress the accelerator or brake pedal, the HDC function immediately stops and there will be more driving or braking force accordingly.

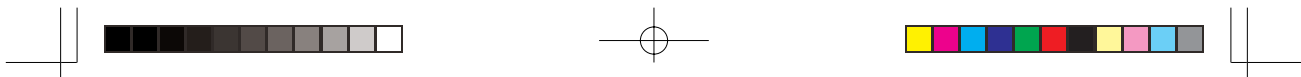
WARNING

When driving down an extremely dangerous steep grade, HDC will still work even if the brake or accelerator pedal is depressed.

12 When HDC is applied, the green HDC indicator blinks.

13 When the red HDC indicator is on, the HDC system is overheated or malfunctioning.

14 When the red HDC indicator is on, the HDC function does not work.



HDC Operational Conditions

1. The HDC switch should be on (The green indicator on the instrument cluster comes on).
2. A certain steep grade.
3. Driving for about 7 ~ 50 km/h in the 2 wheel (2H) or 4 wheel high (4H) speed position. Or driving for about 3 ~ 25 km/h in the 4 wheel low position.
4. The automatic gear shift lever is in the "D" or "R" position. In case of the manual transmission, the gear shift is in the forwarding "1" or "Reverse" position.
5. The accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed.
6. ESP (Electronic Stability Program, including BAS) is not activated.

Deactivation Conditions of HDC

1. The HDC switch is off (The green indicator on the instrument cluster is off too).
2. Less than required steep grade.
3. Vehicle's speed is out of the operational ranges.
4. The automatic gear shift lever is in or passes through the "N" position. Or the manual transmission shift lever is engaged in or passes through the neutral position.
5. The accelerator or brake pedal is depressed.
6. ESP (including BAS) is applied.
7. Because of extended operation of HDC, the system is overheated (The red HDC indicator illuminates).

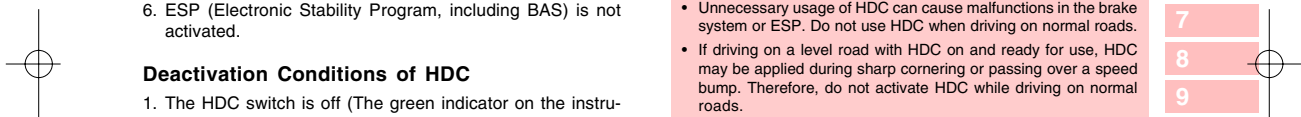
Operation of HDC

When all operational conditions are met, HDC is applied and the green HDC indicator blinks. HDC automatically decreases the vehicle speed to 7 km/h in the 2 wheel (2H) or 4 wheel high speed mode (4H) position. HDC automatically stops at speeds less than 7 km/h or when the slope descends slowly. It is normal to have strong vibrations and noise from the brake system when HDC is applied.

WARNING

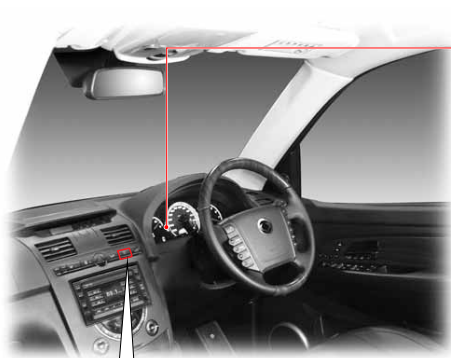
- HDC is designed for driving on off-road steep grades.
- Unnecessary usage of HDC can cause malfunctions in the brake system or ESP. Do not use HDC when driving on normal roads.
- If driving on a level road with HDC on and ready for use, HDC may be applied during sharp cornering or passing over a speed bump. Therefore, do not activate HDC while driving on normal roads.
- If the red HDC indicator illuminates, HDC is overheated or malfunctioning. If the indicator is on even after the system has cooled down enough, have the nearest authorized dealer or service center check the system.
- It is normal to have strong vibrations and noise from the brake system when HDC is applied.
- In case of a manual transmission vehicle, the gear shift is in the forwarding "1" or "Reverse" position. If HDC is attempted in the "2" position, the engine may turn off.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



ESP (ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM) SWITCH AND ESP SYSTEM*

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



ESP

ESP Warning Lamp

Blinking: When ESP is activated.

ON: When ESP is deactivated (by pressing the ESP_{OFF} switch).

When ESP system is defective.

When ESP is activated, the indicator light is blinking and a warning buzzer sounds. If this indicator illuminates in spite of an activated ESP, this means a malfunction of the ESP system.

Stopping ESP Function With ESP_{OFF} Switch

If the driving wheels are slipping on snowy or icy roads, the engine rpm may not increase even when you depress the accelerator pedal, and accordingly, you may not be able to move your vehicle. In this case, stop the ESP function by pressing the ESP_{OFF} switch. When the ESP_{OFF} switch is pressed, the ESP function stops and the vehicle is driven independently from the sensor outputs.

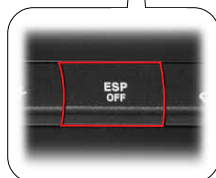
Resuming ESP Function With ESP_{OFF} Switch

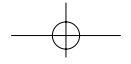
If you push the ESP_{OFF} switch again when the ESP function is deactivated (the ESP warning lamp is turned on), the system will be resumed and the ESP warning lamp on the instrument cluster goes out by resuming the ESP system.

ESP_{OFF} Switch

If you press the ESP_{OFF} switch, the ESP function stops and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on.

Press this switch again to resume the ESP function. At this time, the indicator lamp goes out.





ESP (Electronic Stability Program) System

The Electronic Vehicle Stability Control Program (ESP) is a supplementary driving safety system when your vehicle is unstably moving in a certain situation, such as during a sharp corner. The ESP applies brakes on a certain wheel(s) or controls the engine torque to compensate vehicle stability. These actions help your vehicle avoid dangerous situations. The ESP functions automatically, working only in very unstable conditions; it does not operate under normal driving conditions. If the ESP is engaged, the ESP warning light will flicker on the instrument cluster and a warning alarm will sound.

BAS (Brake Assist System) Function

A certain driver such as a female driver, aged driver, or a driver with a disability is unable to depress the brake pedal as hard as necessary. When the ESP system recognizes any emergency situations requiring hard braking, it automatically delivers an extra high braking pressure to the wheels.

ARP (Active Rollover Protection) Function

This function is a part of the ESP system. When your vehicle moves in an extremely unstable manner, this function helps the vehicle maintain normal stability.

CAUTION

The ARP system more powerfully controls the engine and each wheel than the ESP function. When the ARP is applied, a sudden decrease of vehicle speed or powerful braking force can make steering your vehicle a little difficult.

CAUTION

- If the ESP warning light comes on, the ESP related system is defective. Make sure to check the vehicle at the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- The ESP system does not operate during reverse driving.
- The ESP system activates when the vehicle is unstable to correct the vehicle stability. When the ESP warning lamp and the warning alarm turn on, reduce the speed and pay extra attention to the road.
- The ESP system is only a supplementary device for the vehicle. When the vehicle exceeds its physical limits, it cannot be controlled. Do not rely on the system. Keep driving safely.
- When ESP is applied, you may feel some noise or vibration from the brake pedal or other relevant systems. They are caused by pressure changes in the relevant systems.
- Do not drive off immediately after starting the engine. If you drive off your vehicle within 2 minutes after turning the ignition switch to "ON" position, the ESP self-diagnosis function does not operate. In this case, the abnormal symptoms such as blinking of ESP warning lamp, alarming the buzzer, or braking the wheels may appear.

Driving Impression when ESP is Working

When ESP is applied in a certain situation (the indicator blinks and a warning buzzer sounds), such as during a sharp turn, you may feel that ESP controls each wheel and different levels of needed braking force are applied to wheels. You may hear some noise or feel some vibrations from the brake pedal or other systems. They are caused by pressure changes in relevant system. You may also notice the engine output decreases even when the accelerator pedal is being depressed.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

REMOTE AUDIO CONTROLS & GEAR SHIFT BUTTON (A/T) ON STEERING WHEEL

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Increases/decreases volume



The Power ON/OFF switch of audio system is located at left side of the steering wheel. To turn on the audio system, press this switch. To turn it off, press this switch again.



- In CD (DVD) player/Cassette tape mode
 - Press: Replay the next/previous track.
- In radio mode
 - Press briefly: Manual searching for a station. Move to a stored station.
 - Press and hold: Automatic searching for a station.



Gear shift button (Down-shift)



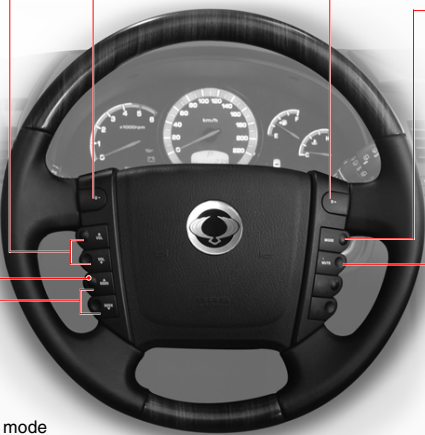
Gear shift button (Up-shift)



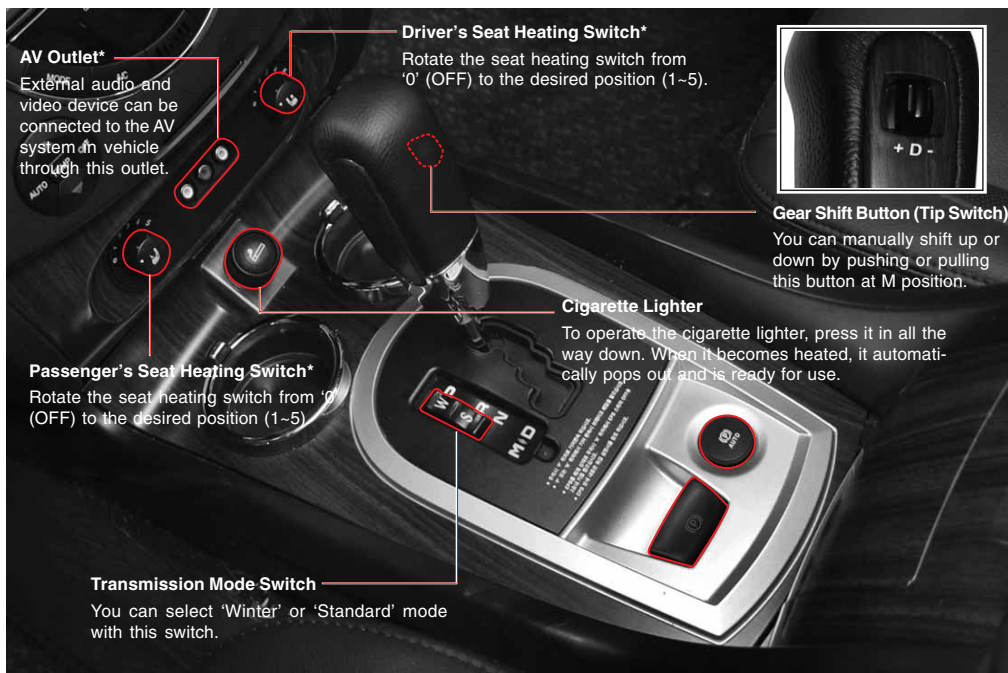
Audio mode changes when the button is pressed.



Stops audio output from the audio system. To resume the audio output, press the button again.



SWITCHES IN CENTER CONSOLE



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

4-WHEEL DRIVE SYSTEM

0

4-Wheel Drive System

1

Transfer case which allows you, in the case of part-time four wheel drive, to switch between two-wheel drive and four-wheel drive. Compared with two-wheel drive vehicles, this system provides more stable driving conditions. This system ensures a more stable drive on wet or slippery roads. In case the greater traction is needed, you can shift into 4 Wheel Drive Low (4L).

2

3

4

5

Types of Four-Wheel Drive System

6

All-Wheel Drive (AWD)*

7

AWD stands for the full-time 4WD system.

8

AWD reduces wheel slippage and provides greater driver control over the vehicle. AWD automatically splits the torque between the front (40%) and rear (60%) wheels. This system controls the vehicle traction force along with the ESP system.

9

10

Torque On-Demand (TOD)*

11

TOD, which is based on the Four-Wheel Drive, enables the control unit to adjust the proportion of the torque between the front and rear wheels according to driving conditions. In case the greater traction is needed, you can shift into 4 Wheel Drive Low (4L).

12

13

Part-Time 4-Wheel Drive

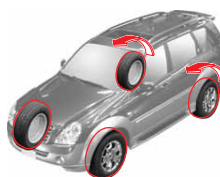
14

Normally, the vehicle is driving in 2WD mode. But if needed, it can be changed into 4WD High (4H), and 4WD Low (4L) by pressing the switch. This is equipped with the control unit that supports the mode transfer. In 4WD mode, the system splits the torque between the front (50%) and rear (50%) wheels.

15

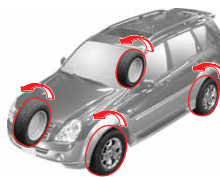
16

DRIVING MODE



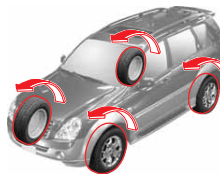
2H : 2-Wheel Drive

This is rear wheel drive with high speed. Use this position for normal driving. This position gives greater fuel economy, quieter ride and least drive train wear.



4H : 4-Wheel Drive, High

Use this position on wet or slippery roads such as sandy, muddy or snow covered roads.



4L : 4-Wheel Drive, Low

Use this position for maximum traction.

4-32

INTERIOR SWITCHES

REXTON II

Driving Mode Change

2H ⇄ 4H

Shifting is possible while driving at the speed of 70 km/h or less.

4WD HIGH

- When shifting the driving mode to "4H", this indicator comes on.
- This indicator blinks during the mode change from "4L" to "4H". After completion of the mode change to 4H, the indicator comes on.

2H, 4H ⇄ 4L

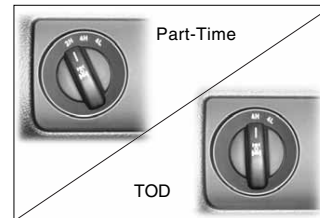
• **Automatic Transmission Equipped Vehicle**
Stop the vehicle on a level ground and place the gear selector lever into the "N" position. Turn the switch to the desired position while depressing the brake pedal.

• **Manual Transmission Equipped Vehicle**
Stop the vehicle on a level ground and place the shift lever into the "Neutral" position. Turn the switch to the desired position while depressing the clutch pedal.

4WD LOW

- When shifting the driving mode to "4L", this indicator blinks until the shifting operation is completed. After completion of the mode change to 4L, the indicator comes on.

4-WHEEL DRIVE SWITCH



Select a proper driving mode according to the road conditions.



NOTE

- The vehicle equipped with TOD system does not have the 2H (2-wheel drive) function because it automatically controls the driving force at front and rear wheels.
- The vehicle with AWD system does not have the 4WD switch because it is driven in full-time 4WD mode.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

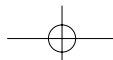
12

13

14

15

16



0 WARNING LIGHTS/INDICATORS AND CAUTIONS WHEN USING 4-WHEEL DRIVE MODE

1 4WD HIGH Indicator

**4WD
HIGH**

- When shifting the driving mode from "2H" to "4H", this indicator comes on.
- When shifting the driving mode from "4L" to "4H", this indicator blinks until the shifting operation is completed. After completion of the mode change to 4H, the indicator comes on.

8 4WD LOW Indicator

**4WD
LOW**

When shifting the driving mode to "4L", this indicator blinks until the shifting operation is completed. After completion of the mode change to 4L, the indicator comes on.

14 4WD CHECK Warning Indicator

**4WD
CHECK**

If this warning light comes on while driving, have the 4WD system checked by Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

Tight Cornering

Cornering a curve in 4WD mode (4L or 4H) may shake up the vehicle or cause skidding. Such phenomena indicate that the four-wheel drive is operated normally, because they can be caused by the resistance of the internal power system according to the difference of rotation between the front and rear wheels. Please avoid excessive and tight cornering in four-wheel drive mode to prevent the power train from being damaged.

CAUTIONS WHEN USING 4-WHEEL DRIVE MODE

- There could be mechanical noises and shocks during mode changes. However, these are normal conditions due to the mode changing operations.
- Use only the 2H mode on a normal paved surface. Do not drive your vehicle in the "4H" or "4L" position on paved road surfaces. Doing so will result in damages to the drive train.
- Driving in a 4 wheel mode on a normal paved surface will cause unwanted noises, premature wear of tires, or increased fuel consumption.
- To shift from "4L" into another mode or vice versa, stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal before any shift.
- If the "4WD CHECK" warning light stays on, have the 4WD system checked by the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- When cornering a curved road in a 4-wheel drive mode (4L or 4H), there could be some mechanical shocks and resistances in vehicle's drive train. These are normal conditions due to internal resistance in the drive train when the 4-wheel drive mode is properly working. To avoid damages to the drive train, do not drive your vehicle at an excessively high speed on a sharply curved road.
- This helps to make the mode changes easily.
- In case of TOD, cornering a curve in 4L mode may cause shock. It is operated normally, because it is caused by non-allowable speed difference between front and rear wheels to achieve maximum traction in 4L mode.

SWITCHES IN OVERHEAD CONSOLE, ROOM LAMP SWITCH

Spot Lamp Switch (Driver's)

The front room lamp (driver's) turns on when pressing in this switch.

Front Door Coupled Room Lamp Switch

If you open a door when this switch is pressed the room lamp comes on. When you close the door, the room lamp is dimmed out.

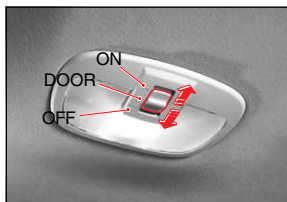
Spot Lamp Switch (Passenger's)

The front room lamp (passenger's) turns on when pressing in this switch.

Sunroof Switch

The sunroof is opened/closed by pulling up/down the sunroof open/close switch. For details, refer to "Sunroof" section in this manual.

Center and Rear Room Lamp Switch



OFF position: The lamp does not come on.

ON position: The lamp stays on.

DOOR position (●): The lamp comes on when the door is opened. The lamp goes out when closing the opened door.

CAUTION

If your vehicle is left unattended while the spot or center room lamp switch is turned on, the battery may be discharged.

If a door is opened for an extended period of time when the door switch is pressed in, the battery may be discharged.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

Instrument Cluster

5

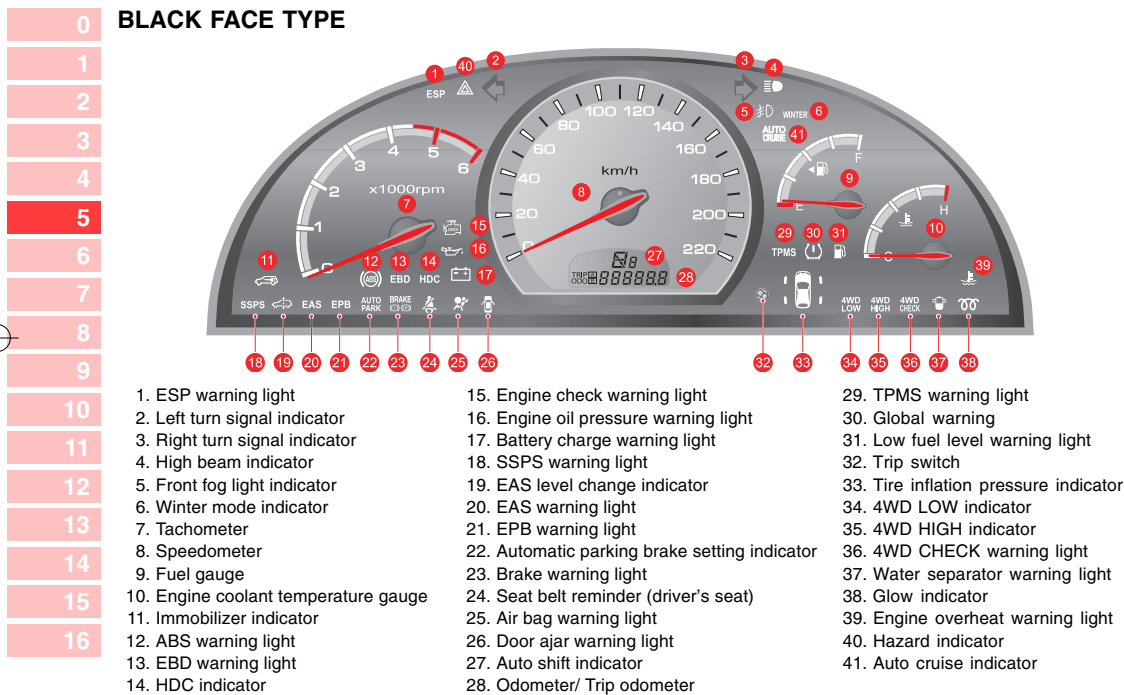
TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Instrument Cluster (D27DTP, D27DT)	5-2
● Instrument Cluster (G32D)	5-4
● Tachometer, Speedometer	5-6
● Fuel Gauge, Coolant Temperature Gauge	5-7
● Display	5-8
● Adjusting the Instrument Cluster Illumination (Black-Face Type)	5-9
● Water Separator Warning Light (DI Engine Only)	5-10
● ESP Warning Light, Immobilizer Indicator, Winter Mode Indicator, SSPS Warning Light	5-14
● Seat Belt Reminder, Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light, Air Bag Warning Light, Battery Charge Warning Light	5-15
● Door Ajar Warning Light, ABS Warning Light	5-16
● EBD Warning Light, HDC Indicator, Engine Check Warning Light, Front Fog Light Indicator	5-17
● High Beam Indicator, Turn Signal/Hazard Warning Indicator, 4WD Indicators	5-18
● Brake Warning Light, Cruise Control Indicator*, Engine Overheat Warning Light, Low Fuel Level Warning Light	5-19
● Glow Indicator (For Diesel Engine)	5-20

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (D27DTP, D27DT)

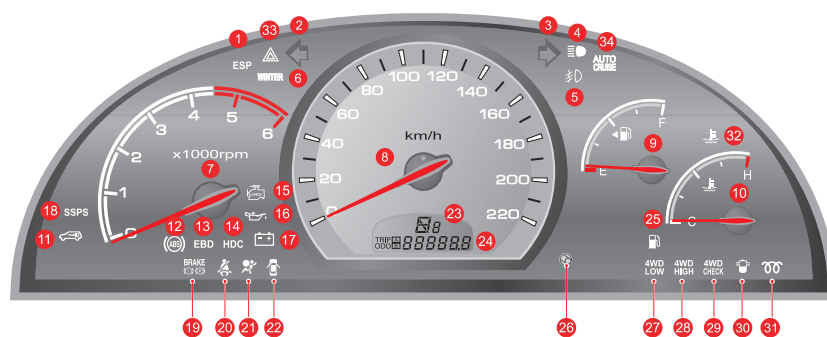
BLACK FACE TYPE



5-2 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

REXTON II

STANDARD TYPE



1. ESP warning light
2. Left turn signal indicator
3. Right turn signal indicator
4. High beam indicator
5. Front fog light indicator
6. Winter mode indicator
7. Tachometer
8. Speedometer
9. Fuel gauge
10. Engine coolant temperature gauge
11. Immobilizer indicator
12. ABS warning light

13. EBD warning light
14. HDC indicator
15. Engine check warning light
16. Engine oil pressure warning light
17. Battery charge warning light
18. SSPS warning light
19. Brake warning light
20. Seat belt reminder (driver's seat)
21. Air bag warning light
22. Door ajar warning light
23. Auto shift indicator

24. Odometer/ Trip odometer
25. Low fuel level warning light
26. Trip switch
27. 4WD LOW indicator
28. 4WD HIGH indicator
29. 4WD CHECK warning light
30. Water separator warning light
31. Glow indicator
32. Engine overheat warning light
33. Hazard indicator
34. Auto cruise indicator

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

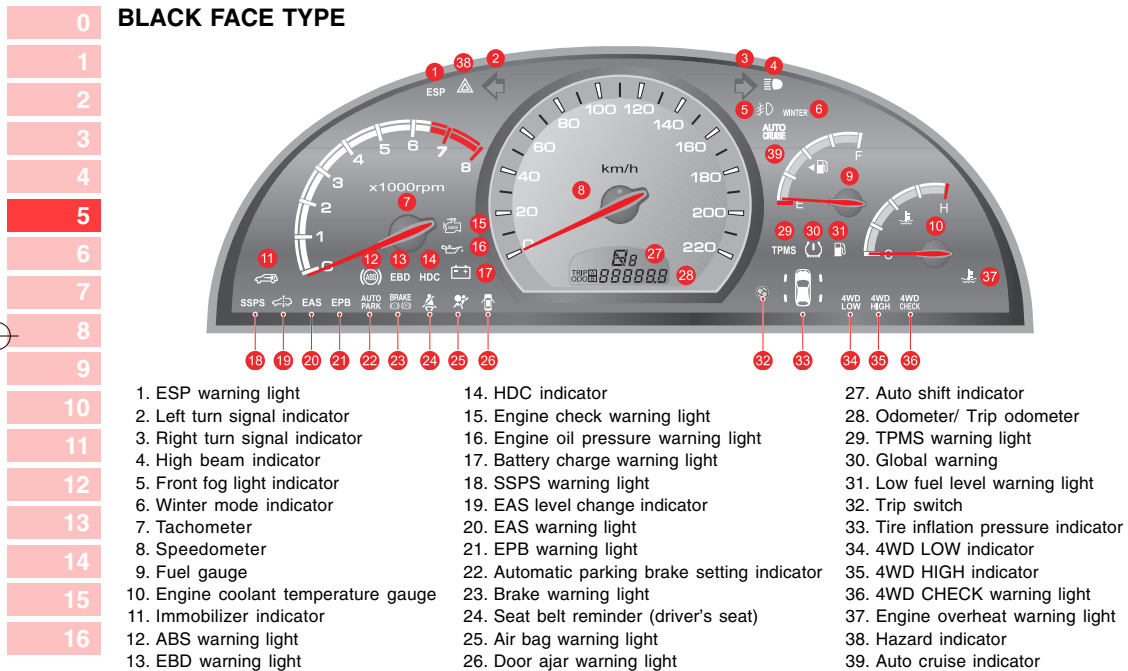
REXTON II

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

5-3

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER (G32D)

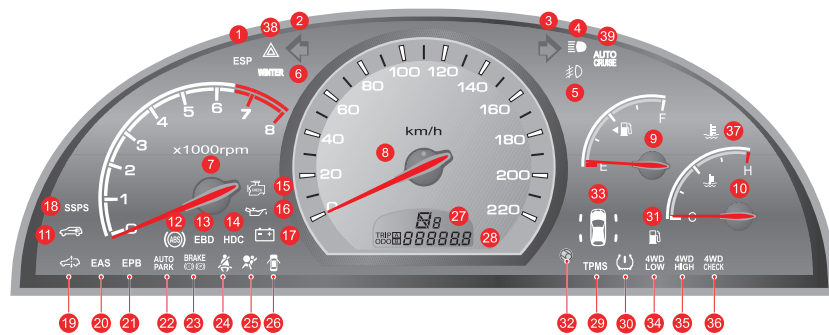
BLACK FACE TYPE



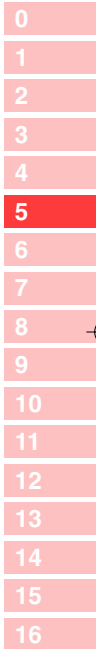
5-4 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

REXTON II

STANDARD TYPE



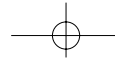
- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ESP warning light | 14. HDC indicator | 27. Auto shift indicator |
| 2. Left turn signal indicator | 15. Engine check warning light | 28. Odometer/ Trip odometer |
| 3. Right turn signal indicator | 16. Engine oil pressure warning light | 29. TPMS warning light |
| 4. High beam indicator | 17. Battery charge warning light | 30. Global warning |
| 5. Front fog light indicator | 18. SSPS warning light | 31. Low fuel level warning light |
| 6. Winter mode indicator | 19. EAS level change indicator | 32. Trip switch |
| 7. Tachometer | 20. EAS warning light | 33. Tire inflation pressure indicator |
| 8. Speedometer | 21. EPB warning light | 34. 4WD LOW indicator |
| 9. Fuel gauge | 22. Automatic parking brake setting indicator | 35. 4WD HIGH indicator |
| 10. Engine coolant temperature gauge | 23. Brake warning light | 36. 4WD CHECK warning light |
| 11. Immobilizer indicator | 24. Seat belt reminder (driver's seat) | 37. Engine overheat warning light |
| 12. ABS warning light | 25. Air bag warning light | 38. Hazard indicator |
| 13. EBD warning light | 26. Door ajar warning light | 39. Auto cruise indicator |



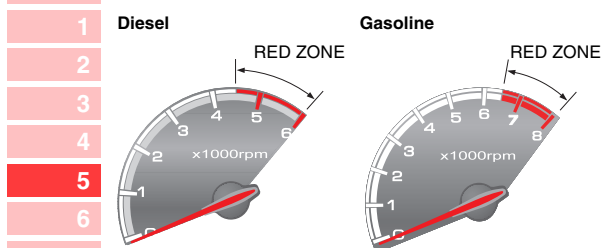
REXTON II

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

5-5



0 TACHOMETER



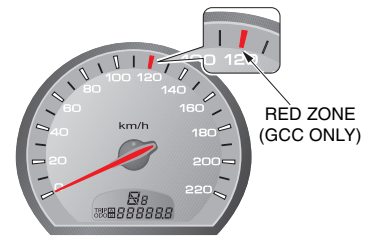
8 The tachometer indicates engine speed in revolutions per minute. Multiply 1,000 to the current number, then it will be the current number of engine revolutions.

10 **Specified idle rpm**

11 Diesel	750 ± 50 rpm
11 Gasoline	700 ± 50 rpm

13 **WARNING**
Do not let engine reach excessive speed, indicated by the pointer being in the red zone.

SPEEDOMETER

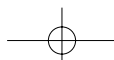


The speedometer indicates the vehicle speed in kilometers per hour (km/h) or mile per hour (mph).

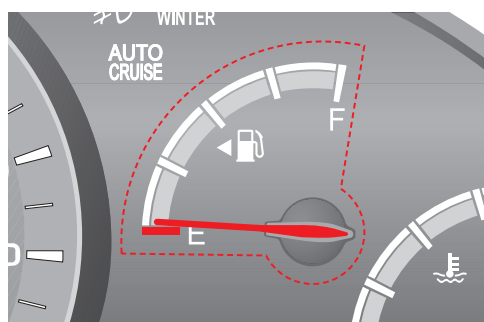
WARNING
Excessive speed can damage engine. Do not let engine reach excessive speed, indicated by pointer being in red zone.

NOTE

Speedometer-KPH (MPH) Speedometer-MPH (KPH)

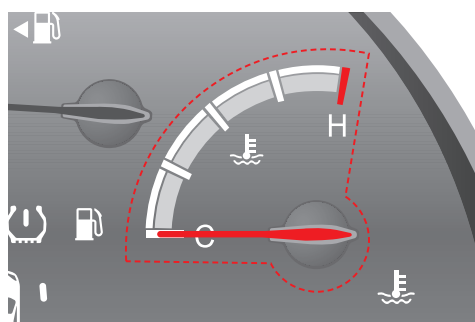


FUEL GAUGE



This gauge indicates the level of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Fill up the fuel tank before the needle reaches “E”.

COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE



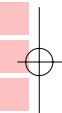
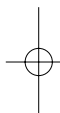
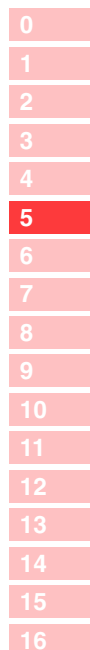
The temperature gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant.

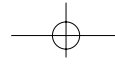
CAUTION

The engine can overheat.

- If the pointer reaches the red zone, stop the vehicle.
- Allow engine to cool.

If the engine is overheated, continued operation of the vehicle may seriously damage the engine.





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

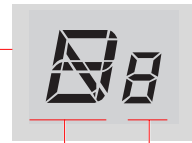
DISPLAY



Trip Switch

Auto Shift Indicator

This indicator shows the gear selector lever position and currently selected gear.

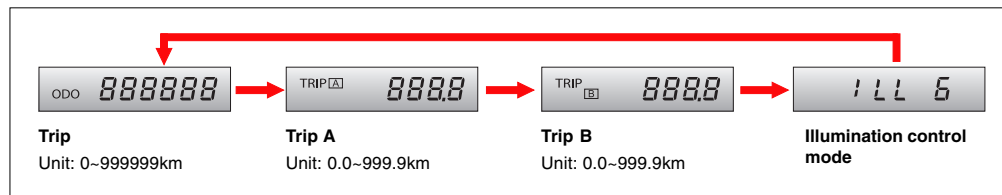


Currently selected gear

Gear selector lever position
(P, R, N, D, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1)

Odometer and Trip Odometer Display

Each time the TRIP/RESET switch on the center panel is pressed lightly, the indicators are changed. To reset the trip meter, press and hold the switch.



ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER ILLUMINATION (BLACK-FACE TYPE)

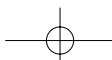


Trip Switch



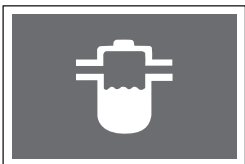
When ILL appears in the trip display by pressing the trip switch (Adjustment Mode for Instrument Cluster Illumination), keep pressing the trip switch, then the instrument cluster illumination will be adjusted while ILL 6, ILL5, ILL4, ILL3, ILL2 and ILL1 appear in the display. Stop pressing the switch when the proper illumination is achieved.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



WATER SEPARATOR WARNING LIGHT (DI ENGINE ONLY)

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Water Separator Warning Light (Without additional water separator)

When the water level inside the water separator in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds. Also, the driving force of the vehicle decreases. If these conditions occur, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter.

For the draining procedures, please refer to "How to drain the water from the fuel filter (Without additional water separate)" on the next page.

This warning light goes off when the draining is completed.

Water Separator Warning Light (With additional water separator)

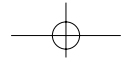
When the water level inside the water separator exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds. Also, the driving force of the vehicle decreases. If these conditions occur, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter & water separator.

For the draining procedures, refer to "How to drain the water from the fuel filter (With additional water separator)" on page 5-12.

This warning light goes off when the draining is completed.

CAUTIONS

- The fuel system in the engine may get serious damage if you keep driving while the warning light is on. Prompt correction should be necessary.
- Using low quality fuel could result in serious damage to the engine due to the water or impurities in fuel. Never use low quality fuel.
- After removing any water in the fuel filter, pump fuel until the priming pump is fully filled before starting the engine.
- When the water level inside the water separator in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds. Also, the driving force of the vehicle decreases. If these conditions occur, immediately drain the water from fuel filter. If the above conditions still exist after draining the water, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

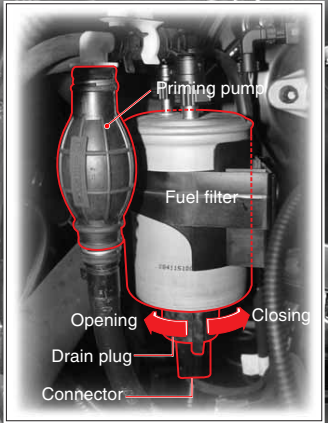
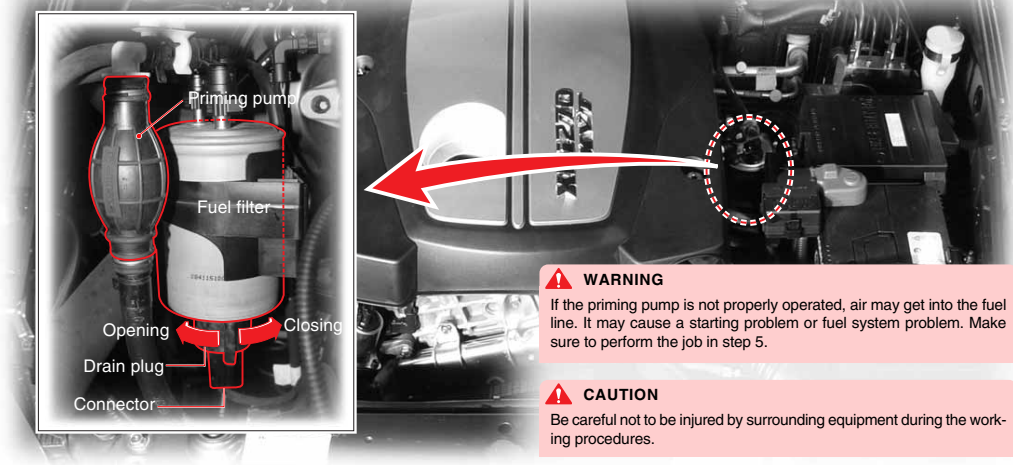


DIESEL ENGINE

How to Drain the Water from the Fuel Filter (Without Additional Water Separator)

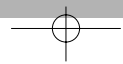
1. Locate the fuel filter in the engine compartment and place a water container under it.
2. Disconnect the connector under the drain plug of the water separator.
3. Turn the drain plug to the opening direction to drain the water.
4. Wait until a certain amount of fuel gets out from the port, then turn the drain plug to the closing direction to tighten it.
5. Engage the connector under the drain plug and press the priming pump until it becomes rigid.
6. Close the engine hood and start the engine.

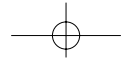
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



WARNING
 If the priming pump is not properly operated, air may get into the fuel line. It may cause a starting problem or fuel system problem. Make sure to perform the job in step 5.

CAUTION
 Be careful not to be injured by surrounding equipment during the working procedures.

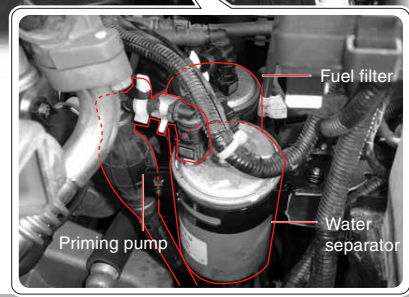




DIESEL ENGINE

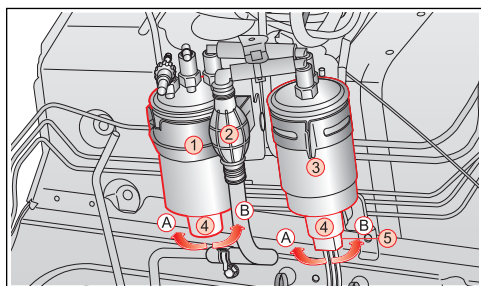
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

How to Drain the Water from the Fuel Filter (With Additional Water Separator)



CAUTION
 Drain the water from the fuel filter & water separator immediately after the warning light comes on. If you cannot do that by yourself, visit the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

WARNING
 The fuel system in the engine may get serious damage if you keep driving while the warning light is on. Prompt correction should be necessary.



1. Fuel filter
2. Priming pump
3. Water separator
4. Drain plug
5. Connector
- A. Opening direction of drain plug
- B. Closing direction of drain plug

1. Locate the fuel filter (1) & water separator (3) in the engine compartment.
2. Place the water container under the fuel filter & water separator.
3. Disconnect the connector under the drain plug (4) of the water separator.
4. Turn two drain plugs to the "A" direction to drain the water.
5. Press the priming pump until all water is drained. After draining, turn the drain plug until the gasket contact to the threaded plug hole, then tighten ("B" direction) it 1/2 turns by hand.

CAUTION

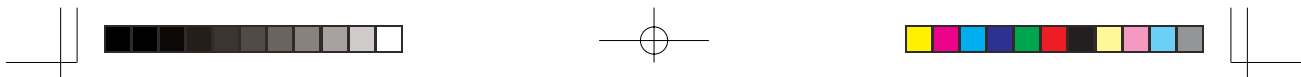
Be careful not to be injured by surrounding equipment during the working procedures.

6. Engage the connector under the drain plug and press the priming pump (2) until it becomes rigid.
7. Close the engine hood and start the engine.

WARNING

If the priming pump is not properly operated, air may get into the fuel line. It may cause a starting problem or a fuel system problem. Make sure to perform the job in step 6.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

ESP WARNING LIGHT



If you press the ESP_{OFF} switch, the ESP function stops and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. If the ESP function operates, the indicator lamp flickers.

If the ESP warning light is on without any deactivation of the system, there are some malfunctions in the system. Take the vehicle to an authorized dealer or service operation.

For more information about ESP (Electronic Stability Program), refer to Chapter 4.

IMMOBILIZER INDICATOR



This indicator comes on when the ignition key is communicating with the engine control unit (during engine starting) for 0.5 seconds.

The time needed for communication between the immobilizer key and ECU can vary. When the time is very short, the immobilizer indicator does not come on.

CAUTION

If this indicator blinks, it may indicate that there is something wrong in the immobilizer system. Have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

WINTER MODE INDICATOR



The indicator comes on when the Winter mode (W) switch near the gear selector lever is pressed.

Use this mode to drive off smoothly on an icy and slippery road.

SSPS WARNING LIGHT



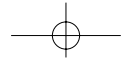
This warning light comes on when the SSPS system is defective. When this warning light comes on, the steerability becomes heavier.

What is SSPS?

Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) is the device that provides good driving condition and steering stability by making the steerability heavier in high-speed driving, and lighter in stop or low-speed driving.

CAUTION

If the SSPS warning light comes on or when you feel the steering wheel heavy, have the SSPS system checked by Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation.



SEAT BELT REMINDER



When the ignition switch is turned to the "ON" position and the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the reminder light will come on and the seat belt warning chime will sound for 6 seconds. This reminding operation stops when the driver fastens the seat belt even during its operation period.

AIR BAG WARNING LIGHT



When the ignition is switched on, this warning light illuminates and then should go off, to confirm that the air bag is operational.

If it does not come on, or if it does not go off, or if it flashes or illuminates continuously while driving, it means that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the air bag system checked without delay by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

NOTE

For more detailed information, refer to the "Seat Belt and Air Bag" section.

ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LIGHT



This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and should go out when the engine is started.

CAUTION

If this light does not go off after engine starting or comes on while driving, it means there is a malfunction in the system. Running the engine with the oil pressure warning light on can cause serious damage to the engine. Have the lubricating system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

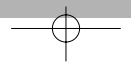
BATTERY CHARGE WARNING LIGHT

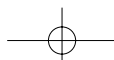


This warning light comes on when the ignition switch is turned on and it goes off when the engine is started.

If this light doesn't go off after engine starting or comes on while driving, it means there is a malfunction in the system. Have the charging system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

DOOR AJAR WARNING LIGHT



This light comes on when a door or the tailgate is either opened or not closed completely.

WARNING

- Driving with the door open can cause injury to people inside and outside the vehicle.
- Before driving off, close all doors.
- Check whether or not the light is off.

ABS WARNING LIGHT



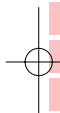
When the ignition switch is turned "ON", this warning light comes on and goes out if the system is normal.

WARNING

- If this light doesn't come on when the ignition is switched to "ON" or if this light doesn't go out, contact your nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center. If this light illuminates while driving, a malfunction of ABS is indicated. In this case the brake system performs its regular function but without the anti-locking capability. Have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center as soon as possible if this condition occurs.
- ABS is a device that prevents wheels from locking during braking to allow steering. However, the ABS system does not shorten the stopping distance.

CAUTION

When the engine starts and the vehicle starts to move, ABS performs self diagnosis by transferring hydraulic pressure to the braking units. This may cause some noise and vibrations. This means ABS is properly functioning.



EBD WARNING LIGHT



When the ignition switch is turned to "ON", this warning light comes on and goes out if the system is normal. If the EBD system is abnormal, the EBD warning light stays on.

WARNING
If the EBD warning light stays on, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

HDC INDICATOR



When the HDC switch is pressed once, HDC is ready for use. The green HDC indicator in the instrument cluster comes on. When the button is pressed again, HDC is deactivated and the indicator goes off.

When HDC is applied, the green HDC indicator blinks.
When the red HDC indicator is on, the HDC system is overheated or malfunctioning. For more information, refer to Chapter 4, HDC Switch.

CAUTION
If the red HDC indicator illuminates, HDC is overheated or malfunctioning. If the indicator is on even after the system has cooled down enough, have the nearest authorized dealer or service center check the system.

ENGINE CHECK WARNING LIGHT



If the light stays on or comes on while driving, some of the engine control components including sensors and devices are defective.

WARNING
If the engine halts due to a completely empty fuel tank and the engine check light comes on even after refueling, the engine's power output may decrease within a certain driving distance (about 30 km).

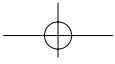
CAUTION
When this warning light comes on, the vehicle operates in safety mode to maintain minimum driving conditions and to prevent the system from being damaged. In this mode, the engine driving force may be decreased or the engine may stall. When this happens, have the system checked at the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

FRONT FOG LIGHT INDICATOR



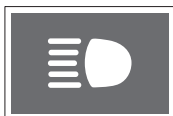
When the tail or head lights are on, the fog lights come on if the fog light switch is turned to the "ON" position. Then, the fog light indicator in the instrument cluster comes on.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

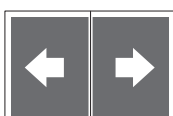
HIGH BEAM INDICATOR



This indicator illuminates when the high beam headlamp is switched on.

WARNING
Driving with high beam headlamp disturbs the approaching vehicle's visibility. For safe driving, use the high beam headlamp only when it is very hard to see the road.

TURN SIGNAL/HAZARD WARNING INDICATOR



Turn Signal Indicator
This indicator blinks when the turn signal switch is turned on.
Both indicators blink when the hazard warning switch is turned on.



Hazard Warning Indicator
This indicator blinks when the hazard warning switch is turned on.

4WD INDICATORS

The vehicle with AWD (All Wheel Drive) system doesn't have the 4WD indicators and 4WD switch.



4WD Low Indicator
When shifting the driving mode to "4L", this indicator blinks until the shifting operation is completed. After completion of the mode change to 4L, the indicator comes on.



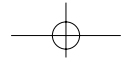
4WD High Indicator
When shifting the driving mode from "4L" to "4H", this indicator blinks until the shifting operation is completed. After completion of the mode change to 4H, the indicator comes on.



4WD Check Warning Light
This warning light comes on when the ignition switch is turned to "ON" and should go out if the system is normal. If the "4WD CHECK" warning light stays on, have the 4WD system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

CAUTION

- If the "4WD CHECK" warning light stays on, have the 4WD system checked.
- Do not drive your vehicle over 80 km/h in 4H mode.



BRAKE WARNING LIGHT



This warning light comes on when the parking brake is applied and/or the brake fluid level is lower than a specified level.

CAUTION

If the vehicle is driven for over 2 seconds (over 10 km/h) while the parking brake is applied, the parking brake warning light comes on and a warning buzzer sounds. If it occurs, immediately stop the vehicle and release the parking brake.

WARNING

Driving the vehicle with the brake fluid warning light on is dangerous. If the parking brake light stays on, you must immediately have your vehicle checked and serviced by Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATOR*



This indicator comes on when the cruise control is switched on.

ENGINE OVERHEAT WARNING LIGHT



When the engine coolant temperature is abnormally hot, the engine overheat warning light blinks and a warning buzzer sounds. When this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place and let the engine cool down. For more information, refer to Chapter 12 "When the engine is overheating."

CAUTION

If you keep driving the vehicle with the warning light and buzzer on, the engine can be damaged. After completely cooling down the engine have an authorized dealer or service center check the vehicle.

LOW FUEL LEVEL WARNING LIGHT

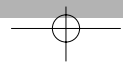


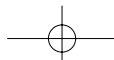
This warning light indicates that the fuel will soon be exhausted. The time it takes to turn on, however, varies according to the vehicle operation or road conditions. Do not wait until this light is on to refuel the vehicle. It is recommended that fuel should be added as soon as this light comes on.

CAUTION

While driving on steep hills or rough roads, this warning light may come on if the remaining fuel level is low.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

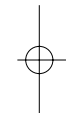
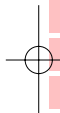
GLOW INDICATOR (FOR DIESEL ENGINE)



When the ignition switch is turned to "ON", this indicator comes on and stays for a short time or may go off right away. When the glow plugs are sufficiently heated, the light will go out. In the vehicle equipped with a direct injection type engine, this indicator may come on very shortly or may not even come on.

CAUTION

When the glow indicator comes on while driving or the engine cannot be started properly, have the glow plug system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.



Transmission and Brake System 6

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Manual Transmission 6-2
- Gear Selector Lever in Automatic Transmission 6-4
- Driving Tips For Automatic Transmission 6-6
- Gear Selector Lever Positions 6-7
- Winter (W) Mode 6-13
- Safety Mode (Automatic Transmission). 6-14
- Parking Aid System* 6-15
- 3.5° Aiming Down Of Outside Rearview Mirror During Reverse Driving 6-17
- Brake System 6-18

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

0

The manual transmission in your vehicle has 5 forward gears and 1 reverse gear. To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal. Then, move the gearshift lever into a desired gear. After shifting, release the clutch slowly.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

1st Gear

Position for driving off and high traction force

10

Depress the clutch pedal to its deepest point and move the shift lever to "1". Then, slowly release the clutch pedal while gently depressing the accelerator pedal to drive off.

11

12

13

Neutral Position

Position for engine start, vehicle stop, and parking

14

15

16

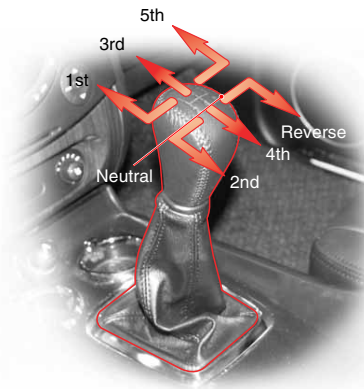
3rd Gear

For low- or mid-speed driving. Be careful to avoid any unwanted shift from the 2nd gear into the 5th gear, rather than the 3rd gear.

5th Gear

Position for very high speed driving on a highway

Be careful to avoid any unwanted shift from the 5th gear into the 2nd gear, rather than the 4th gear.



Reverse Gear

Position for reverse driving

4th Gear

Position for normal and high speed driving

2nd Gear

Position for low speed driving

6-2

TRANSMISSION AND BRAKE SYSTEM

REXTON II

GEAR SHIFTING IN MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Starting

The engine can be started only when the clutch pedal is depressed.

Driving Off

To change gears, fully depress the clutch pedal. Then, move the gear selector lever into a desired gear (1st gear or reverse gear). After shifting, release the clutch slowly.

Reversing

You should stop your vehicle and fully depress the clutch pedal before you shift into the reverse position.

NOTE

- When the temperature of the transmission oil is very low on a cold day, you may have some difficulty for shifting gears. This is a normal phenomenon.
- When you have difficulty for shifting into the 1st or reserve gear, put the gear shift lever into the neutral position and release the clutch pedal. Then, depress the pedal again and shift into the intended gear.

CAUTION

- If the clutch pedal is frequently half-depressed, the clutch disk will be easily worn out. Use only as needed.
- Do not put your foot on the clutch pedal if not shifting gears.
- While your vehicle is moving, do not put your hand on the shift lever except to shift gears. Otherwise, the gear may be disengaged from the transmission and the internal transmission components may be damaged.

WARNING

- When shifting from a high gear into a lower gear, ensure that the RPM gauge pointer does not go into the red zone on the gauge. Especially, when shifting from the 5th to the 4th gear, moving the gear shift lever to the left too much may result in shifting into the 2nd gear. This will cause a sudden increase of the engine speed and may damage the engine and the transmission.
- Do not shift into the second next higher gear from a lower gear. Also, while the engine is rotating fast, do not shift into a lower gear.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

GEAR SELECTOR LEVER IN AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Gear Position

P: Parking
R: Reverse
N: Neutral
D: Driving

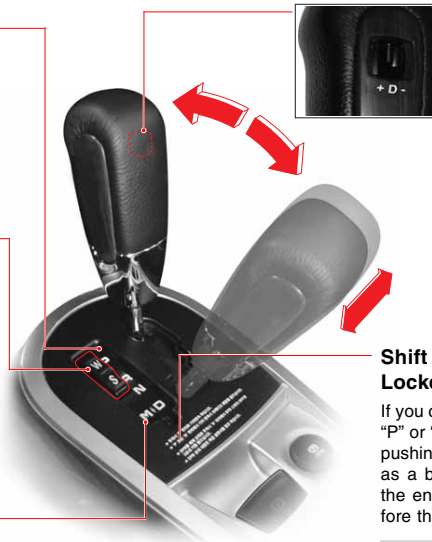
Mode Switch

- **W** : Winter mode
- **S** : Standard mode

Use the standard mode in normal driving conditions.

Selection of Manual / Automatic Shift Function

D: Automatic shift according to the driving condition
M: Manual shift



Tip Switch in "M" Position (Manual Gear Shift)

The shiftable gear can be adjusted by moving this switch to forward and rearward when the gear selector lever is in "M" position.

Shift Lock Release Button when Locked in the "P" Position

If you cannot move the selector lever from the "P" or "N" position, try to move the lever while pushing down here with a sharp object such as a ballpoint pen. For your safety, turn off the engine and depress the brake pedal before the attempt.

To shift into any other positions from the "P" or "N" position after stopping the vehicle, you have to depress the brake pedal with the ignition switch "ON"

Starting and Driving Off

1. Always start the engine while the selector lever is in “P” and the brake pedal is depressed. For your safety, avoid starting the engine from “N” even though you can do so.
2. Check whether or not the engine speed is in a normal operating range (below 1,000 rpm). Keep the brake pedal depressed and shift into “D” or “R”.
3. Depress the brake pedal, release the parking brake, and move the gear selector lever to “D” position. Wait for a while several seconds before driving off with the brake pedal depressed.
4. To move the vehicle, release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal gradually.

⚠ WARNING

- For your safety, always depress the brake pedal before moving the gear selector lever with the vehicle stopped.
- Never depress the accelerator pedal when moving the gear selector lever.
- If you have to stop on a hill, depress the brake pedal securely.
- When starting the engine with the accelerator depressed, your vehicle may abruptly move and cause an accident.
- When the parking brake is released while the engine is running at a high rpm, your vehicle may abruptly move. Therefore, wait until the engine speed becomes stable.
- To avoid any mechanical damages or accidents, never shift into “P” or “N” while the vehicle is in motion.
- When driving at a high speed, any sudden attempt to shift from a higher to a lower gear can severely damage the vehicle. In addition, your vehicle may lose its stability and be at a high risk.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not abruptly drive off or sharply accelerate the vehicle after shifting into “D”. Otherwise the transmission will be damaged. Especially, when you start off after stopping, wait for a while until the “D1” shift indicator comes on for several seconds with the brake pedal depressed.
- When driving on a down hill, never shift the selector lever to “N”. If you try to shift the lever to “D” from “N”, a sudden gear engagement can damage the driving train.
- HDC is designed for driving down a steep hill. When HDC is applied, do not shift to “N”. Otherwise, HDC will be deactivated.
- Even though you can start the engine with the selector lever in both “P” or “N”, for your safety, always start the engine with the selector lever in “P”.
- As a safety function, the gear selector lever cannot be moved into the “P” or “R” position when the vehicle speed about 8 km/h.
- Never shift into “R” when the vehicle is moving.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

DRIVING TIPS FOR AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

0

Creep Phenomenon

Without any depression of the accelerator pedal, your vehicle can move slowly if the selector lever is in any position other than “P” or “N”. This is called the creep effect. You can control your vehicle’s movement by only applying the brake in heavy traffic or narrow areas.

1

2

3

4

CAUTION

- On a steep decline or incline, your vehicle may move in the opposite direction of the intended direction in spite of the creep effect. When stopping on a steep hill, always depress the brake pedal.
- Never move the selector lever to the “N” position while driving. By doing so, the engine brake cannot be applied. This may result in unwanted accidents.

5

6

7

8

9

Kickdown Function

If you need to accelerate rapidly, depress the accelerator pedal completely to the floor. Then, a one- or two-lever gear will automatically be engaged. This is called the Kickdown function.

10

11

12

13

CAUTION

- Do not use the kickdown operation while driving on slippery or sharply curved roads.
- If you use the kickdown function too frequently, the durability and fuel economy of the vehicle will get worse.

14

15

16

Engine Brake

When the accelerator pedal is released while the vehicle is in motion, the engine speed decreases. This decreased engine speed creates an extra braking force. On a down hill, engaging a lower gear can generate a slower engine speed and eventually slow down the vehicle speed. By using this engine brake, you can decrease your vehicle speed without excessively using the brake system. The lower gear, the more braking force.

CAUTION

- Do not excessively apply the brake pedal while going down a long hill. The brake system will overheat, experience vapor lock or the fade phenomenon, and lose the braking force.
- Be aware that the engine brake does not work when the gear selector lever is in the “N” position.
- Avoid any abrupt engine braking on slippery roads, or the tires may slip.

GEAR SELECTOR LEVER POSITIONS



P: Park position
 R: Reverse position
 N: Neutral position
 D: Drive position
 M: Manual shift

P: PARK POSITION

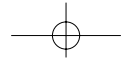


Use this position to park your vehicle, warm up the engine, or stay in a location for an extended length of time.
 To shift into any other position, depress the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- Never shift into “P” when the vehicle is moving, or the transmission will be damaged.
- Stop the vehicle completely before shifting into “P”.
- To shift from the “P” position to another position, the ignition switch must be turned to “ON” and the brake pedal should be depressed. Any forcible attempts to move the selector lever from “P” without the two procedures may damage the selector lever.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

R: REVERSE POSITION



- Use this position to reverse the vehicle.
- To shift into “R” from “P” or “N”, completely stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal. When the shift lever is in “R”, and parking aid system will be activated (optional (if equipped)).

⚠ WARNING

- Never shift into “R” when the vehicle is moving.
- Please note that the vehicle may slowly move rearward when the selector lever is at “R”.

⚠ CAUTION

As a safety function, the gear selector lever cannot be moved into “P” or “R” when the vehicle speed is about 8 km/h.

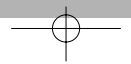
N: NEUTRAL POSITION



At this position, the engine does not transfer power to the wheels and the vehicle will not move on a flat road. However, for safety, apply the brake when the gear is in this position. To shift into “D” or “R” position from “N” position after stopping the vehicle, you have to depress the brake pedal with the ignition switch “ON”.

⚠ WARNING

- Warm up the engine for approx.3 minutes when the ambient temperature is below -15°C. Otherwise, the gear selector lever may not be moved smoothly (N→R). It is designed for protecting the vehicle and is not a fault.
- Never shift into “N” from the “D” position or vice versa when the vehicle is moving, or the transmission will be damaged.
- If you have to stop on a hill and would like to use this neutral position, depress the brake pedal firmly.
- Never attempt to move the gear selector lever to “N” when the vehicle is in motion.



D: DRIVE POSITION



Use this position for normal driving conditions. The transmission is automatically shifted from 1st gear up to 5th gears according to the level of depression on the accelerator pedal.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not abruptly drive off or sharply accelerate the vehicle after shifting into "D", or the transmission will be damaged. Especially, when you start off on a hill after stopping and parking the vehicle, wait for a while until the "D1" shift indicator comes on with the brake pedal depressed.
- Even while the gear is in "D", the vehicle can roll down an uphill according to the gradients, so you have to depress the brake pedal.

⚠ CAUTION

Please note that the vehicle may slowly move forward on level ground when the selector lever is in "D".

⚠ WARNING

- If you touch the selector lever unexpectedly while driving, the shiftable gear may be changed. It can make the vehicle unstable. Be careful not to touch the selector lever while driving (especially during the winter season).
- Do not downshift abruptly (3, 2, or 1) when the vehicle speed is high (D or 4). You could lose control and hit people or objects (especially on a slippery road).
- If low-range maximum speeds are exceeded when the selector lever is in low gears, the transmission can be damaged.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

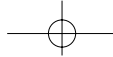
12

13

14

15

16



0 SHIFT LEVER LOCK RELEASE

1 Shift Lock Function

2 This system locks the gear selector lever in the automatic transmission according to the driving status and conditions to prevent driver from making operational mistakes, to protect the system, and to provide good driving stability.

5 Shift Lever Lock in "P" or "N" Position

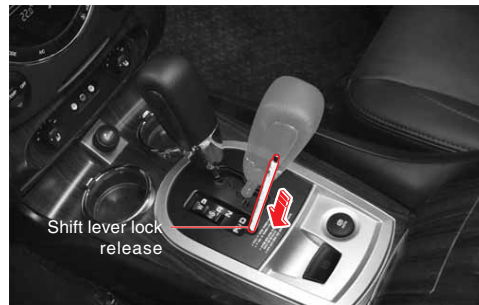
6 To shift from "P", the ignition switch must be turned to ON and the brake pedal must be depressed.

7 If you cannot shift out of "P", check the followings:

- 8 - The ignition key is in "ON".
- 9 - The brake pedal is depressed.

10 Prohibition of Gear Shift from "N" to "R" While Driving

11 To maintain the vehicle stability and protect the drive train of the vehicle, the gear shifting from "N" to "R" is not available when the vehicle speed about 8 km/h.



If you cannot shift out of "P" with the ignition switch in ON, and the brake pedal depressed:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly and turn the ignition off.
2. Depress the brake pedal and push down the shift lock release lever with a stick such as a pen. Then, shift the lever to other position.

! WARNING

If this happens, have your vehicle repaired by the nearest Ssangyong dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center as soon as possible.

MANUAL GEAR SHIFT BY TIP SWITCH

Adjustment for the Shiftable Gear

Driving gear can be adjusted by operating the tip switch after moving the gear selector lever from "D" to "M" position.

Selecting "M":
Manual gear shift



If the gear selector level is moved to "M" position while driving, the gear is shifted down to the next lower gear.

NOTE

To prevent shift shock and to protect the system, in some cases, the current gear may not be shifted to the lower gear even if the gear selector lever is moved to "M" position.

Use of Engine Brake

To use the engine brake, change into the manual gear shift mode first, then operate the tip switch to next lower shiftable gear.

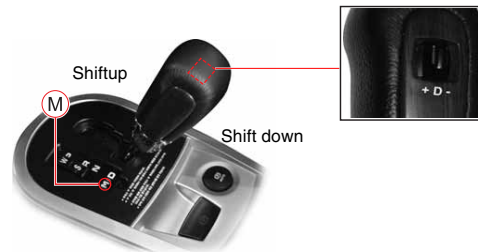
CAUTION

- Operate the tip switch only once. If you keep pressing the button, the gear may be shifted through several steps in a series.
- Abruptly using the engine brake may make driving unstable. Do not use the engine brake abruptly especially when driving on roads covered with snow or ice.

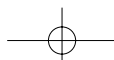
Tip Switch on Steering Wheel








Tip Switch in Gear Selector Lever



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



0 GEAR POSITION DISPLAY ON INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

- | | | |
|----|---|--|
| 0 | | |
| 1 |  | • In this position, you can only use the 1st gear in the transmission. Use this position on long mountainous terrains, steep hills, and rough off-road. This also provides the engine brake effect on steep downhill. |
| 2 | | |
| 3 | | |
| 4 | | |
| 5 |  | • The drive position prevents the transmission from shifting into the third or fourth gear. Select drive range 2 for more power when climbing hills, for the engine braking effects when driving down steep hills. |
| 6 | | |
| 7 | | |
| 8 |  | • At this position, the transmission is automatically shifted from the 1st gear up to the 3rd gear according to the vehicle speed. You can get the engine brake effect when using this position during downhill driving. |
| 9 | | |
| 10 | | |
| 11 | | |
| 12 |  | • Select this position for normal forward driving on paved roads. In this position, the transmission is automatically shifted from the 1st gear up to the 4th gear according to the vehicle speed. |
| 13 | | |
| 14 | | |
| 15 |  | • In this position, the transmission is automatically shifted from the 1st gear up to the 5th gear according to the vehicle speed. Select this position for normal forward driving on paved roads. |
| 16 | | |



Manual Gear Shift Position



- CAUTION**
- When pushing and holding the manual gear shift switch, the gear may be shifted through several steps in series. Make sure to shift one step at a time.
 - Please note that the gear may be upshifted if you fully depress the accelerator pedal while driving with 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th gear.
 - If you apply excessive force when moving the manual gear shift switch, the gear may not be shifted into other gears. Soft and smooth operation is recommended.

WINTER (W) MODE

Winter Mode

In this mode, the vehicle can start off from the 2nd gear (forward and reverse). Use this mode in the event of starting-off on slippery roads.

Winter Mode (W)

- To select the winter mode, press “W” on the mode switch. The “WINTER” indicator in the instrument cluster comes on.
- In this mode, the vehicle can start from the 2nd gear (forward and reverse). Use this mode in the event of starting-off on slippery roads.

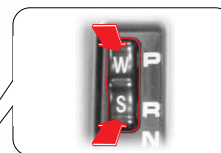
Standard Mode (S)

- Use the standard mode in normal driving conditions.

How to Start Off the Vehicle with 2nd Forward/Reverse Gear

1. Press the “W” portion of the mode switch to select the winter mode.
2. Place the selector lever to “D” and check if the shift lever indicator shows “D2”.
3. You can now start off the vehicle with the 2nd forward gear.
4. Place the selector lever to the “R” position to start off the vehicle with the 2nd reverse gear.

Mode Switch



Use the standard mode in normal driving conditions and use the winter mode on slippery roads.



CAUTION

- Even while the gear is in “D”, the vehicle can roll down an uphill according to the gradients, so you have to depress the brake pedal.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

SAFETY MODE (AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION)

0 SYMPTOMS

1 When the transmission has an electrical or mechanical fault, the transmission operates in the safety mode to maintain minimum driving conditions and to prevent the transmission from being damaged.

2 When the transmission is defective, the symptoms that can occur are as follows:

- 3 • Heavy shock when moving the selector lever
- 4 • Decreased driving force while driving at high speed
- 5 • Fixed gear position during driving (cannot accelerate the vehicle)
- 6 • The shift indicator displays only "D" other than "D1" even when the gear selector lever is moved to "D" position.

7 **CAUTION**

- 8 • If you find any symptoms caused by mechanical or electrical defects in the transmission, stop the vehicle immediately and reset the safety mode.
- 9 • If abnormal operation of the transmission (fixed at the 2nd forward gear in "D" or 2nd reverse gear in "R") still exists, have the system checked by a Ssangyong dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- 10 • If the mechanical or electrical problem still exists, have the system checked by a Ssangyong dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

RESETTING THE SAFETY MODE WHEN THE GEAR IS FIXED

How to Reset the Safety Mode

1. Park the vehicle and place the selector lever to "P".
2. Stop the engine and wait for more than 10 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Symptoms After Resetting the Safety Mode

- If the vehicle operates normally after resetting, the problems are corrected.
- If gear is fixed at the 2nd forward gear in the "D" position or the 2nd reverse gear in "R". Have the system checked by a Ssangyong dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.





PARKING AID SYSTEM*

When the gear selector lever is shifted into "R", the parking aid system is activated and the sensors in the rear bumper detect the distance to any obstacle. You can figure out the distance from the obstacle to your vehicle by the alarming sound. The alarm interval becomes faster as your vehicle approaches the object.



Obstacle Detecting Sensor

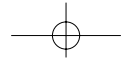
When you move the gear selector lever to "R", the alarm sounds according to the distance from obstacle to vehicle.

Distance	Alarm interval
over 1.2 m	no alarm 
90 cm - 1.2 m	approx. 2.6 sec 
60 cm - 90 cm	approx. 0.7 sec 
25 cm - 60 cm	alarm stays on 

CAUTION

- The alarm does not sound if the distance between sensor and obstacle is less than 25 cm. However, if the sensor detects the obvious obstacle, the alarm may sound.
- Do not rely on the parking aid system while gear selector lever is in "R" position. Drive backward while checking the rear side of your vehicle.
- If the buzzer sounds abnormally or sounds for over 3 seconds when placing the gear selector lever to "R" position, the parking aid system is defective. Have the system checked at Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service center.



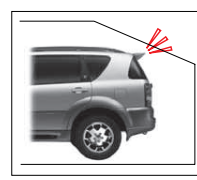


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

CAUTION

You should continue to utilize the mirrors or turning your head. When reversing, adhere to the common precautions.

- The parking aid system is a supplementary system to help your parking. It is not intended to replace the driver's attentiveness.
- Do not press or shock the sensors by hitting or using a high-pressure water gun while washing. The sensors could be damaged.
- Normally, when you select the "R" position with the ignition "ON", the alarm sounds "beep" once.



In the parking lot as shown in the figure, the upper portion of the vehicle can be hit before the sensor operation, so check with the outside rearview mirrors or by turning your head during parking.

The alarm interval becomes faster as your vehicle approaches the obstacle.

► **Certain obstacles that sensors cannot detect**

- Thin and narrow objects, such as wires, ropes, or chains
- Cotton, sponge, clothes, snow that absorb ultrasonic waves.
- Obstacles lower than the bumper: Drainage or puddle

► **Sensor Cannot Detect**

- When the sensing portion is frozen.
- When the sensing portion is covered by rain, water drops, snow or mud.

► **Weak Sensing Scopes**

- When they are partially covered by snow or mud.
- When the ambient temperature is too high or too low.

► **Not Defective But Improperly Working**

- When driving on rough roads, gravel roads, hills, or grass.
- When the bumper height is changed due to a heavy load.
- When receiving other ultrasonic signals (metal sounds or air braking noises from heavy commercial vehicles).
- When a high-power radio is turned on.
- When the sensor is hindered by improperly fitted accessories.

3.5° AIMING DOWN OF OUTSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR DURING REVERSE DRIVING

3.5° Aiming Down



1. Select left (L) or right (R) side mirror with the mirror select switch.



2. The selected mirror aims down 3.5° when the gear selector lever is moved to "R" position.

3. The outside rearview mirror returns to the original position when shifting out from "R" position.



CAUTION

- This function does not operate when the mirror selection switch is at center position.
- This is a supplementary system to help your driving. It is not intended to replace the driver's attentiveness.
- If you need to operate the windows, complete it before shifting to "R" position.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

BRAKE SYSTEM

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Warning Light & Indicator				
Brake warning light	ABS warning light	EBD warning light	HDC indicator	ESP warning light
				



6-18 TRANSMISSION AND BRAKE SYSTEM **REXTON II**

BRAKE PEDAL (FOOT BRAKE)

The brake pedal (foot brake) is designed to decrease the vehicle speed and stop the vehicle. Do not excessively apply the brake pedal while going down a long hill. The brake system will overheat causing the vapor lock or fade phenomenon thus losing braking force. Use the foot brake along with the engine braking effects by selecting lower gears.

CAUTION

Avoid abrupt engine braking on slippery roads or the tires may slip.

Fade?

Reduction or loss in braking force due to loss of friction between brake pads and disc.

Vapor Lock?

When the brake system is overheated, the fluid in the brake lines will boil and form bubbles. Only the bubbles will be compressed when the brake pedal is depressed. So the brakes cannot work properly due to loss of braking force.

Engine Brake?

A system that allows for the slowing of a vehicle that is independent of the conventional braking systems. A driver would normally down-shift to slow the driver's descent of a hill, using engine compression. The engine brake increases the effectiveness of this regarding force.

BRAKE WARNING LIGHT



Illuminating

This warning light comes on when the parking brake is applied and/or the brake fluid level is lower than a specified level.

Flashing

If the vehicle is driven for over 2 seconds (at a speed of 10 km/h or higher) while the parking brake is applied, the parking brake warning light flickers and the warning buzzer sounds. If it occurs, immediately stop the vehicle and release the parking brake.

Brake Pads/Discs

Check the brake pads/discs for wear at every 10,000 km of driving and replace if necessary.

If a brake pad/disc squeaks, replace it with new one immediately.

It indicates that they should be replaced.

CAUTION

The service interval is subject to driving style.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

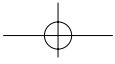
12

13

14

15

16



0 ESP (ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM)*

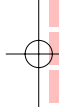
1 ESP SYSTEM?

2 The ESP system is an electronic vehicle stability control and safe driving system and driving safety supplementary system that helps to avoid dangerous situations by controlling the brakes on the wheels or the engine torque to compensate vehicle stability when it is extremely unstable under conditions such as sharp cornering.

ESP_{OFF} Switch (Cancellation/Resume of ESP Function)

If the driving wheels slip on snowy or icy roads, the engine rpm may not be increased even when you depress the accelerator pedal, and accordingly, you may not be able to move your vehicle. In this case, stop the ESP function by pressing the ESP_{OFF} switch. When the ESP_{OFF} switch is pressed, the ESP function stops and the vehicle is driven independently from the sensor outputs.

6 ESP Warning Light



7 Turning on of ESP Warning Lamp

8 If you press the ESP_{OFF} switch, the ESP function stops and the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster comes on. Press this switch again to resume the ESP function. At this time, the indicator lamp goes out.



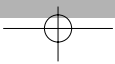
11 ESP Warning Lamp Flickering

12 If the ESP function operates while driving, the indicator lamp flickers and the alarm sounds.

14 **WARNING**

15 If the ESP warning light comes on, the ESP related system is defective. Make sure to check the vehicle at the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

16



ABS (ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM)*

ABS (Anti-Lock Brake System)?

When braking suddenly or braking on slippery roads, the vehicle keeps moving forward but the wheels are locking and not rotating. If these happen, your vehicle may lose stability or rotate resulting in an accident. ABS helps to maintain directional stability and control of the vehicle.

ABS Warning Light



When the ignition switch is turned "ON", this warning light comes on and goes out if the system is normal.

WARNING

- If this light doesn't come on when the ignition is switched on or if this light doesn't go out, contact your nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center. If this light illuminates while driving, a malfunction of ABS is indicated.
- ABS is a device that prevents wheels from locking during braking to allow steering. However, the ABS system does not shorten the stopping distance.
- According to the road conditions, the stopping distance of the vehicle with ABS may be longer or shorter than that of the vehicle without ABS.

EBD (ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION)*

EBD (Electronic Brake-force Distribution)?

When the brake pedal is applied, it controls the braking pressure electronically to effectively distribute the braking forces to the front wheels and rear wheels. EBD operates when the speed differences between the most fast front wheel and the rear wheel are over 1 km/h. If ABS is engaged, it does not operate.

EBD Warning Light

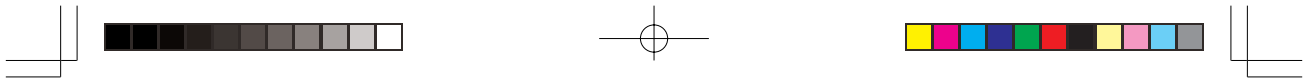


When the ignition switch is turned to "ON", this warning light comes on and goes out if the system is normal.

CAUTION

If the red HDC indicator illuminates, HDC is overheated or malfunctioning. If the indicator is on even after the system has cooled down enough, have the nearest authorized dealer or service center check the system.

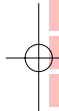
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



0 **HDC (HILL DESCENT CONTROL)***

1 **HDC (Hill Descent Control)?**
2 HDC stands for Hill Descent Control. When traveling down
3 steep grades, this function allows you to travel at a low speed
4 without depressing the brake pedal. This convenient function
5 is only for driving down steep grades. Therefore do not use
6 this function for anything other than driving down steep hills.

7 **HDC Indicator**

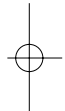


8 **Green light on:** HDC is ready for use (by
9 pressing the HDC switch).
10 **Green light blinking:** HDC is being applied.
11 **Red light on:** the HDC system is overheated
12 or malfunctioning.

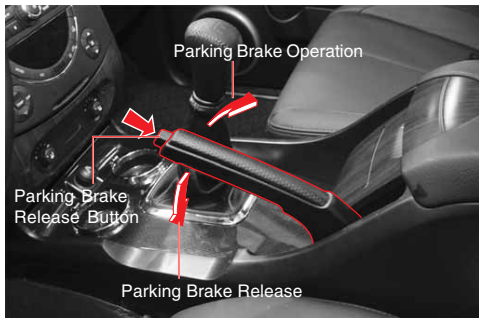
13 **CAUTION**
14 If driving on a level road with HDC on and ready for use, HDC may be
15 applied during sharp cornering or passing over a speed bump.
16 Therefore, do not activate HDC while driving on normal roads.

HDC Operation


When this button is pressed once, HDC is ready for use. When all operational conditions are met, HDC is applied and the green HDC indicator blinks. HDC automatically decreases the vehicle speed to 7 km/h in the 2 wheel (2H) or 4 wheel high speed mode (4H) position or to 3 km/h in the 4 wheel low speed position. HDC automatically stops at speeds less than 7 km/h or 3 km/h. When the button is pressed again, HDC is deactivated and the indicator goes off.



HAND OPERATED PARKING BRAKE



Parking Brake Operation

Park your vehicle at a safe place and pull up the parking brake lever. Then, the parking brake warning light () comes on.

Parking Brake Release


Press the parking brake release button at the end of the lever and lower the parking brake lever.

Warning Light and Warning Sound When Driving While the Parking Brake is Engaged

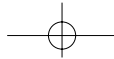


If you drive the vehicle without releasing the parking brake, the brake warning light blinks and the buzzer sounds to warn the driver when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h for more than 2 seconds. When this happens, stop the vehicle immediately and release the parking brake.

CAUTION

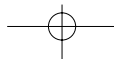
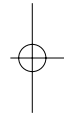
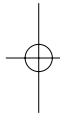
- Before driving off, be sure to check that the brake warning light is turned off.
- Driving with the parking brake applied could damage the rear brake system. Before driving, fully release the parking brake.
- If the brake warning light () doesn't go out after releasing the parking brake, have the brake system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

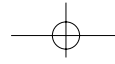
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



MEMO

Lined area for notes, consisting of 15 horizontal lines.





Seats

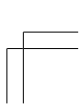
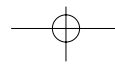
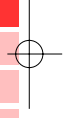
7



TABLE OF CONTENTS

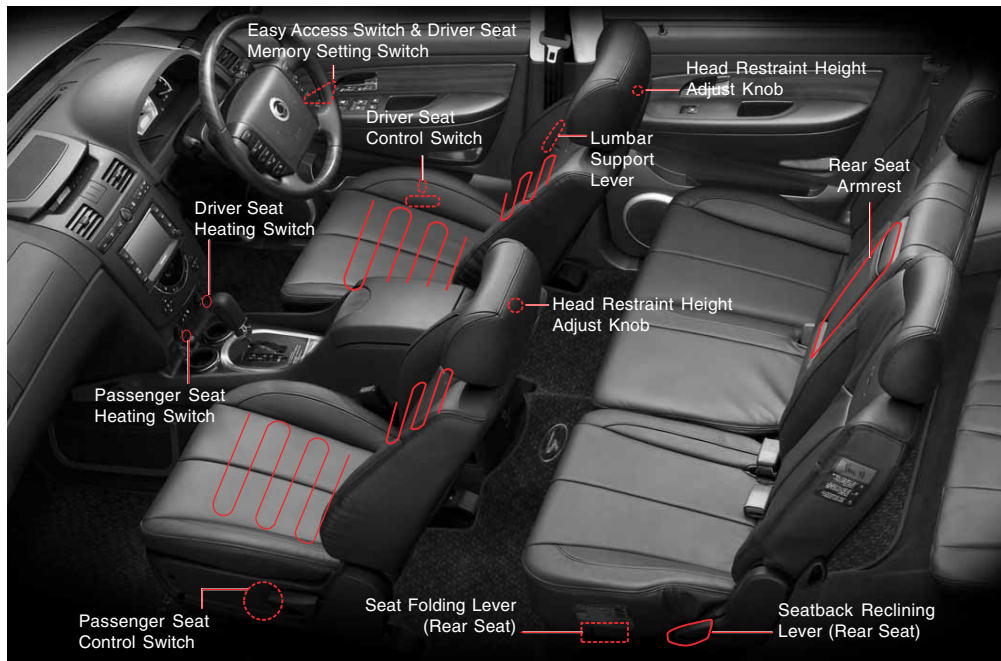
- Devices Related To Seat 7-2
- Driver's Seat 7-4
- Passenger's Seat 7-9
- Second Row Seat 7-10
- Third Row Seat 7-12
- Seat Heating System* 7-14
- Warning and Caution 7-15

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7**
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



DEVICES RELATED TO SEAT

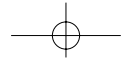
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



7-2

SEATS

REXTON II

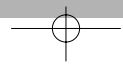


WARNING AND CAUTION

- WARNING**
- All necessary driver's seat adjustments should be made before any driving.
 - Make sure that your seat is completely locked after adjusting.
 - Do not recline the seatback more than needed for comfort while vehicle is in use. Seat belt is the most effective when the passenger sits back and straight up in the seat. If the seatback is reclined too much, then the risks of sliding under the lap belt and getting injured are increased.
 - Never press the driver's seat & outside rearview mirror position switch while the vehicle is in motion.
 - Any object that might damage the seat should not be placed on the seat.
 - Front seats are equipped with heated lines. If the following types of persons sit on the heated seats, they might receive minor burns. Extra caution is needed for them: children, elderly persons, ill persons, persons with sensitive skin, excessively fatigued persons, persons under the influence of alcohol or sleep-inducing medication such as cold medicine or sleeping pills.
 - Do not put anything on the seat that insulates heat, such as a blanket, cushion or seat cover.
 - Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case if a collision. Make sure that the head restraints are in place and adjusted before driving.

- CAUTION**
- Power seats will be operated even when the ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position. However, to prevent battery discharge, operate your seats when the engine is running.
 - Do not use two or more seat adjustment buttons simultaneously. It can damage the motor. Be sure to operate the electric seat button one by one.
 - When cleaning leather seats, never use oil-based solvents such as benzene, alcohol, gasoline, or thinner. Or they will cause discoloration and dull the surface of the seats.
 - Do not forcibly operate any power adjustment switch if the seat comes in contact with other object and cannot be adjusted anymore.
 - If the power seats are not operational, the seats should be checked and fixed before any driving.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7**
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

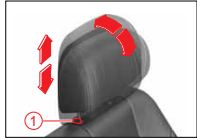


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

POWER SEAT*

1 Height Adjustment and Tilt Operation of Head Restraint

To raise the head restraint, pull it up without pressing the release button. To lower the head restraint, press the release button ① on top of the seatback and push the head restraint down.

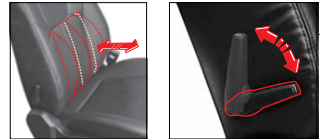


⚠ WARNING
Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.



Seat Heater*
By operating the seat heater switch, you can heat the seat cushion and seatback.

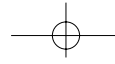
Lumbar Support (Driver's Seat)



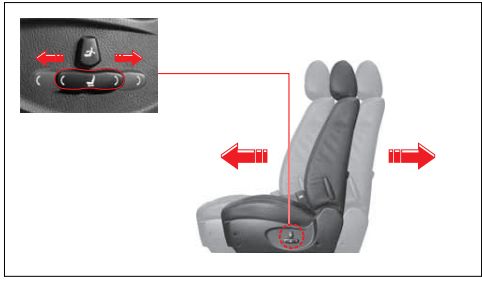
Turn the lever forward to increase the amount of lumbar support. To decrease it, turn the lever backward.

Seat Position Control Switches

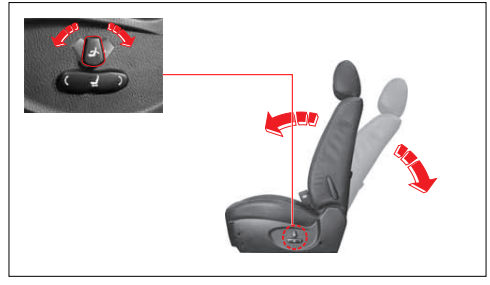
⚠ WARNING
Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving. Control of the vehicle can be lost.



Seat Slide Adjustment

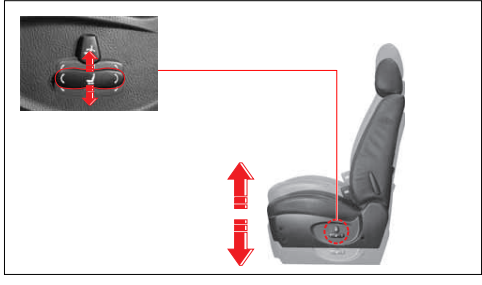


Seatback Reclining Adjustment

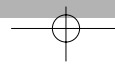
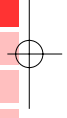
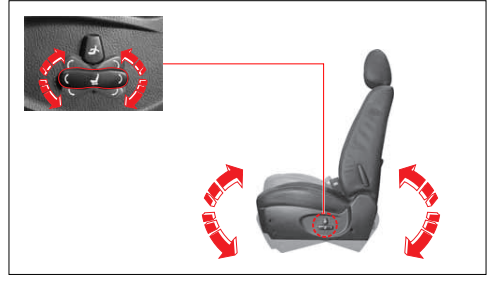


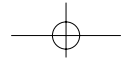
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Seat Height Adjustment



Seat Tilt Adjustment





0 EASY ACCESS SYSTEM (DRIVER'S SEAT)*

1 This system is designed to provide the driver sufficient space to access and exit.



Easy Access Button

- 7**
- 8**
- 9**
- 10**
- 11**
- 12**
- 13**
- 14**
- 15**
- 16**

CAUTION

- The moving distance of the seat is based on when the seat is located at its front end. It varies according to the initial position.
- There could be some differences when the seat moves back to its original position. The differences of the passenger weights and electrical loads can cause the differences in its distance, and this is normal, not defective.
- Operation of easy access while the parking brake is not securely applied may cause an accident. Make sure that the gear selector lever is in "P" position and the parking brake is securely applied.
- The easy access system may not operate properly when operating the seat memory switch or any other switches during the easy access operation.

To operate

To use this function, press the Easy Access button located at driver's window switch panel.

To exit: The seat moves rearward and downward when removing the ignition key only while the parking brake warning light in the instrument cluster is ON or the gear selector lever is in "P" position before turning off the ignition switch. However, the gear position requirement is not applied to the manual transmission equipped vehicle since it does not have the "P" position. Therefore, manual transmission equipped vehicle is only applied parking brake.

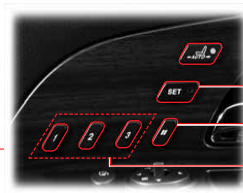
To access : The seat moves back to its original position when turning the ignition key to "ON" position while the gear selector lever is in "P" position or the parking brake is applied. However, the gear position requirement is not applied to the manual transmission equipped vehicle since it does not have the "P" position. Therefore, manual transmission equipped vehicle is only applied parking brake.

To release

To release this function, press the Easy Access button again.

POSITION MEMORY SETTING*

The position memory is available for up to three drivers. Each driver can set his/ her own driver's seat and outside rearview mirror positions. The information will individually be stored in the integrated computer. If somebody has moved the seat, the memory positions can be recalled automatically by pressing the position button.



SET button

STOP button

Position button
(1, 2, 3)

CAUTION

- The automatic positioning operation stops when operating any seat adjusting switch or the outside rearview mirror adjusting switch during its operation. To erase the memorized seat and outside rearview mirror positions, press the "STOP" button.
- If you do not press any position button within 5 seconds after pressing "SET" switch, the memory setting is cancelled.

To Store the Memory Settings

1. Position the transmission shift lever to "P" with the ignition switch "ON" (for your safety, do not start the engine). In case of a manual transmission vehicle, you must apply the parking brake too.
2. Adjust the driver's seat and outside rearview mirrors to the desired positions.
3. Press the (SET) switch. The indicator on the switch comes on.
4. Within 5 seconds, press and hold one of the position buttons (1), (2), (3) you want to set. When the memory setting is completed, a buzzer sounds twice.

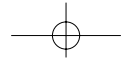
To Recall the Memory Settings

1. Press and hold one of the position buttons (1), (2), (3) you want until the buzzer sounds.
2. The driver's seat and outside rear view mirrors start to move to the stored positions. If you drive off during this recalling process, this automatic memory setting stops operating.
3. Wait until they stop moving.
4. When the process is completed, a buzzer sounds twice.

REXTON II

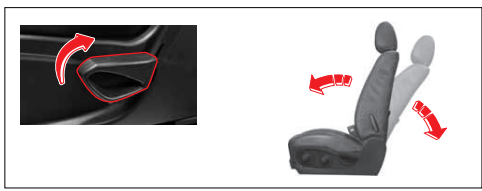
SEATS 7-7

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



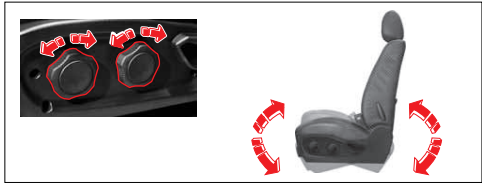
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Seatback Reclining Adjustment



To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly and raise the lever. Then, lean back to the desired angle and release the lever. After adjusting, make sure the lever is returned to its original position and the seatback is locked.

Seat Height Adjustment



You can adjust the angle and height of the front or rear section of the seat cushion by rotating the adjustment knob on the side of the seat clockwise or counterclockwise.

DRIVER'S SEAT (MANUAL SEAT)

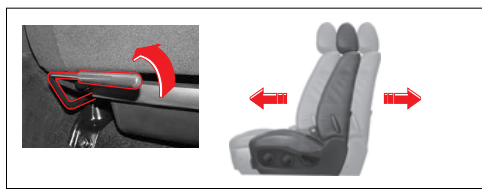


Height Adjustment and Tilt Operation of Head Restraint
Same as that of the power seat

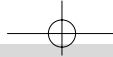
Seat Heater*
Same as that of the power seat

Lumbar Support
Same as that of the power seat

Seat Slide Adjustment



To move the seat forward or backward, pull and hold the seat slide lever up and move the seat as desired. Then, release the lever.



PASSENGER'S SEAT

Power Seat*

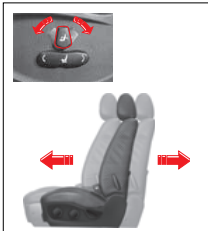
Head Restraint

Same as that of driver's seat

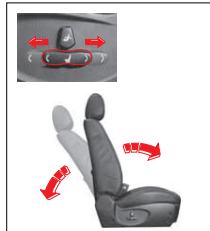
Seat Heater*



Seat Slide Adjustment



Seatback Reclining Adjustment



Manual Seat

Head Restraint

Same as that of driver's seat

Seat Heater*

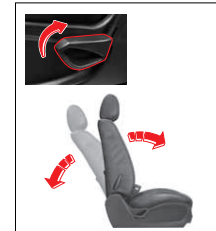
Storage bin



Seat Slide Adjustment



Seatback Reclining Adjustment



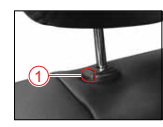
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

SECOND ROW SEAT

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Head Restraint Adjustment



To raise the head restraint, pull it up without pressing the release button. To lower the head restraint, press the release button (1) on top of seatback and push the head restraint down.

WARNING
Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.

Seatback Reclining Adjustment

Pull up the lever and adjust the seatback angle to the desired position. After adjustment, release the lever and make sure that the lever is returned to its original position and the setback is securely locked.

Armrest

The middle of the second row seat is equipped with an armrest.

Seat Backboard

Release the backboard lock after folding the second and third row seats. Then let the backboard tilt toward the third row seat. The second and third row seats will be flat.

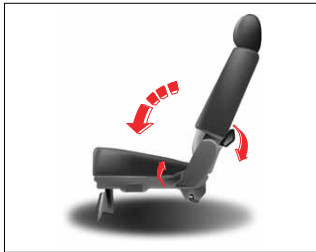


Backboard Lock Lever

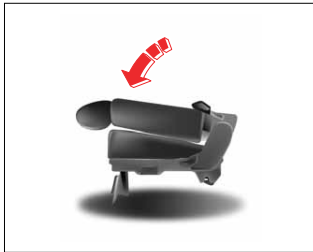
Seat Folding Lever

To access to the third row seats easily, make the second row seat upright. Raise the second row seat while pulling up the seat folding lever with the second row seatback folded down.

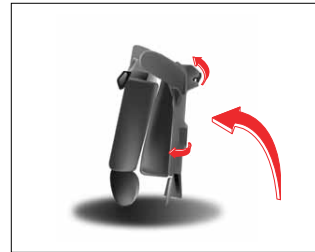
FOLDING THE SECOND ROW SEAT (WHEN ACCESSING TO THIRD ROW SEAT)



1. Position the headrest to the lowest level.
2. Pull up the seatback reclining lever and fold down the seatback.



3. Press the upper portion of the seatback until it is engaged with seat cushion.



4. Pull up the seat folding lever and make the seat upright.



5. Fix the folded seat to the front seat with a fixing strap from the case under the floor.

CAUTION

- If the headrest is not adjusted to the lowest level, the seat can be reached to the front seat while making it upright.
- After folding the seatback, ensure to press the upper seatback to set the seat upright. If the seat is made upright without fixing the seat, the seat can be damaged by conflicting with the front seat.

6. Unfold the seat in the reverse order of folding. Make sure that the seat is securely locked. If the seat is not locked, the seat may be folded forward.



WARNING

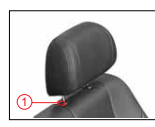
When returning the second row seat to its original position, be careful not to hit the feet and leg of the passenger in third row seat.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Head Restraint Adjustment



To raise the head restraint, pull it up without pressing the release button. To lower the head restraint, press the release button (1) on top of seatback and push the head restraint down.

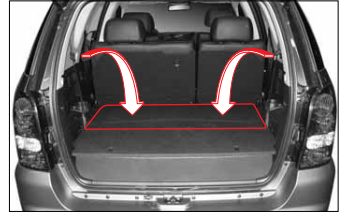
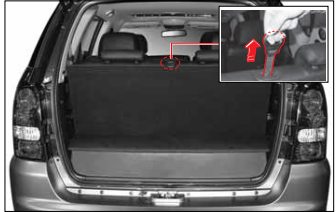
WARNING
 Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision.

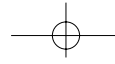
Folding Lever

Pull up the folding lever to fold down the third row seat.

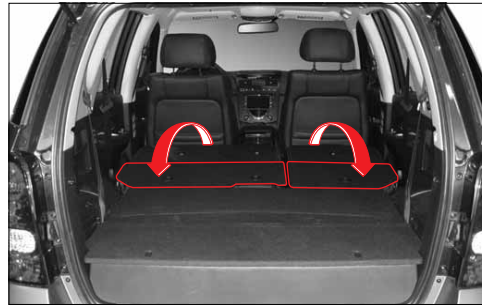
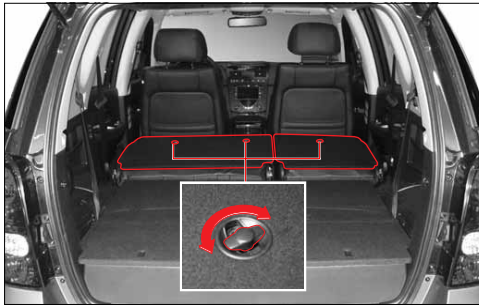
SEAT FOLDING (MAKING A LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT)

1. Position the headrest to the lowest level.
2. Pull up the folding loop of the third row seat, and fold the seatback forward.
3. Fold the seatback of the third row seat to make the luggage compartment.





MAKING A BED

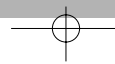


1. Fold down the third row seats. (refer to "Folding the third row seat" section)
2. Fold down the second row seats. (refer to "Folding the second row seat" section)
3. Lock the seatback of second row seats by pressing the upper portion of it.
4. Release the locks on backboard of the second row seat.
5. Make a bed by unfolding the backboard.

WARNING

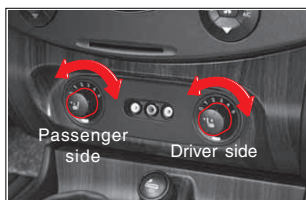
- When you put the luggage on the folded seat, make sure that the luggage is placed firm enough to avoid being shaken while driving. A shaky or improperly fixed luggage may injure the driver or passenger. Besides, ensure that the luggage does not obstruct the field of the rearview.
- Do not sit on the folded seat because the seatbelt and other safety devices would not be able to protect you. It may cause serious injury in case of accident.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



SEAT HEATING SYSTEM*

0 Front Seat Heating Switch



7 To operate seat heater

1. Start the engine.
2. Turn the seat heating switch from 0 (OFF) to the desired position (1 ~ 5).
3. The seat cushion and seatback will be warmed up. The seat heater indicator on the switch comes on during its operation.

NOTE

The seat heater is turned off when you turn the ignition switch off while the seat heater is operating. If you want to operate the seat heater again, turn the seat heating switch to other position and then select the desired position.

WARNING AND CAUTION

WARNING AND CAUTION

WARNING

- Do not operate the seat heater for a long time when the passenger is an infant, child, old or handicapped person, person with sensitive skin, person under the influence of alcohol, or excessively fatigued person. They might receive minor burns.
- If your skin is in contact with the heated seat for a long time, you might get low temperature burns. Be careful.
- Do not put anything on the seat that insulates heat, such as a blanket, cushion or seat cover.
- If the temperature continues to rise, turn the switch off and have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- In the case of the driver's seat, an excessive usage of the heated seat might make you sleepy and could negatively affect your safety.
- Do not place anything sharp on the seat. This may cause damage to the seat heater.
- All necessary driver's seat adjustments should be made before any driving.
- Make sure that your seat is completely locked after adjusting.
- Any object that might damage the seat should not be placed on the seat.
- Front seats are equipped with heated lines. If the following types of persons sit on the heated seats, they might receive minor burns. Extra caution is needed for them: children, elderly persons, ill persons, persons with sensitive skin, excessively fatigued persons, persons under the influence of alcohol or sleep-inducing medication such as cold medicine or sleeping pills.

WARNING

- Do not put anything on the seat that insulates heat, such as a blanket, cushion or seat cover.
- Removed or improperly adjusted head restraints can result in serious head and neck injuries in case of a collision. Make sure that the head restraints are in place and adjusted before driving.
- Do not recline the seatback more than needed for comfort while vehicle is in motion. The seat belt is the most effective when the passenger sits back and straight up in the seat. If the seatback is reclined too much, then the risks of sliding under the lap belt and getting injured are increased.

CAUTION

- Power seats will be operated even when the ignition switch is turned to the "OFF" position. However, to prevent battery discharge, operate your seats when the engine is running.
- Do not use two or more seat adjustment buttons simultaneously. It can damage the motor. Be sure to operate the electric seat button one by one.
- When cleaning leather seats, never use oil-based solvents such as benzene, alcohol, gasoline, or thinner. Or they will cause discoloration and dull the surface of the seats.
- Do not forcibly operate any power adjustment switch if the seat comes in contact with other object and cannot be adjusted anymore.
- If the power seats are not operational, the seats should be checked and fixed before any driving.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

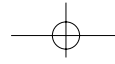
12

13

14

15

16



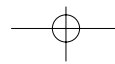
Seat Belt and Air Bag

8

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Seat Belt and Air Bag 8-2
- Seat Belt 8-4
- How to Fasten the Three Point Seat Belt .. 8-5
- How To Fasten the Seat Belts in Second Row Seat 8-6
- Child Restraints and Pregnant Woman 8-8
- Warnings for Seat Belt 8-12
- Air Bag 8-14
- Warnings for Air Bag 8-18

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



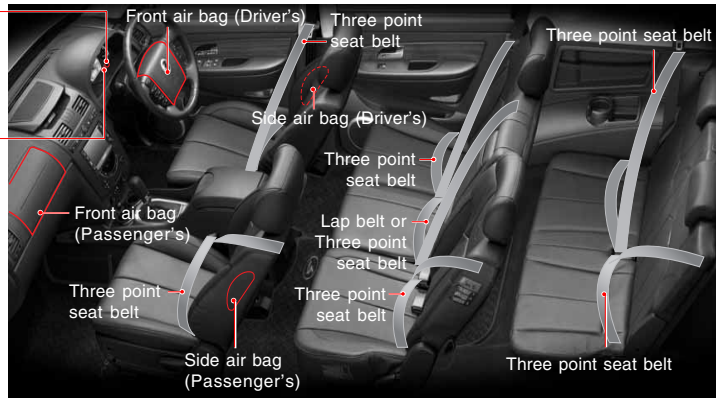
SEAT BELT AND AIR BAG

To protect you and your passengers in the event of an accident, it is highly recommended that the seat belts should be used by all occupants inside of your vehicle.

Air Bag Warning Light



Seat Belt Reminder



The Restraint Systems Include:

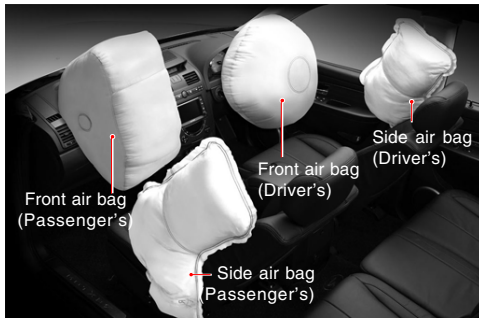
- Air bags
- Seat belts
- Seat belt pretensioners (For front seat)

As independent systems, their protective functions complement one another.

Fastening the Seat Belt

When seat belts are not used or improperly worn, they may not only work as designed, but also cause some injuries to occupants. In addition, air bags can protect occupants when the occupants are wearing their seat belts. Air bags may cause injuries to occupants if they do not wear or inappropriately use their seat belts.

AIR BAG



When a strong frontal impact occurs, the front air bags are inflated.

⚠ WARNING

- Before driving, all occupants should fasten their seat belts. If not, the occupants can seriously be injured in a collision or sudden maneuvering of the vehicle.
- Each seat belt should be used by only one occupant at a time.
- Seat belts and air bags can significantly minimize possible injury to occupants. But they cannot perfectly protect occupants from fatal collisions or injury.
- Modifications and improper maintenance for the safety systems could cause serious injury. The safety systems including seat belts should be checked and repaired by only a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- An infant or small child should always be restrained in an infant or child restraint.

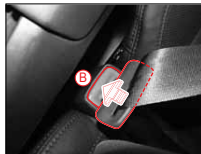
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

SEAT BELT

0 SEAT BELT IN FRONT SEATS

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8**
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Fastening the Seat Belt



- Insert the metal latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.
- To unfasten the seat belt, press the button (B) on the buckle.



Seat Belt Height Adjustment



- To raise the seat belt, slide the seat belt height adjuster up.
- To lower the seat belt, press the button (A) and slide it down.

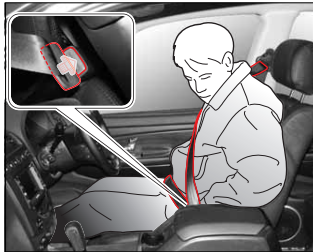
⚠ WARNING

- Adjust the seat belt height before driving.
- Shoulder belt should be positioned midway over the shoulder, never across the neck.

HOW TO FASTEN THE THREE POINT SEAT BELT



1. Pull out the latch plate from the retractor. If the seat belt is locked when being pulled out, rewind it completely in the retractor, then pull it out to the desired length.



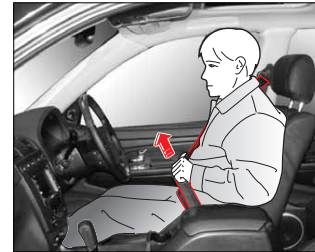
2. Position the shoulder belt across the body and the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.
3. Adjust the seat belt height as needed.

CAUTION

Sit back in the seat with the seatback in an upright position and wear the seat belt.

WARNING

Make sure that the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Pull the latch plate to make sure it is securely locked. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.
5. To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle.

WARNING

Improperly worn seat belts could cause serious injury or death.

- Put the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Do not put it across the waist. In an accident, the belt may apply pressure to your abdomen. This may cause internal injuries.
- The shoulder belt should be positioned midway over the shoulder, never across the neck.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

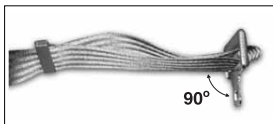
16

HOW TO FASTEN THE SEAT BELTS IN SECOND ROW SEAT

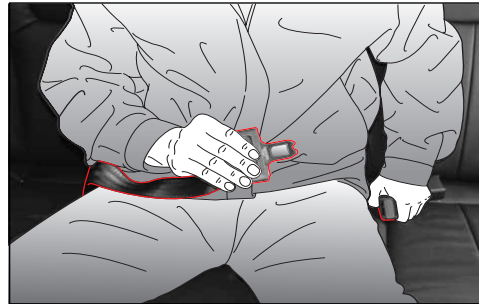
1. Pull out the latch plate at the right of the seat.

WARNING

Put the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Do not put it across waist. In an accident, the belt may apply pressure to your abdomen. This may cause serious internal injuries.



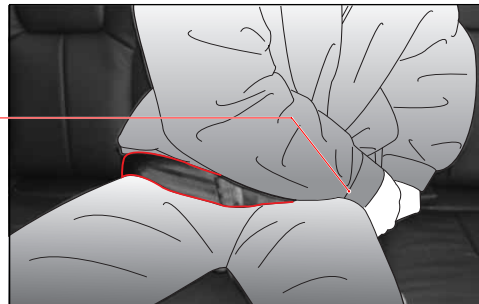
To lengthen, hold the metal latch plate at a right angle to the belt and pull the belt. To shorten, pull the free end of the belt away from the latch plate, then pull the belt clip to take up the slack.



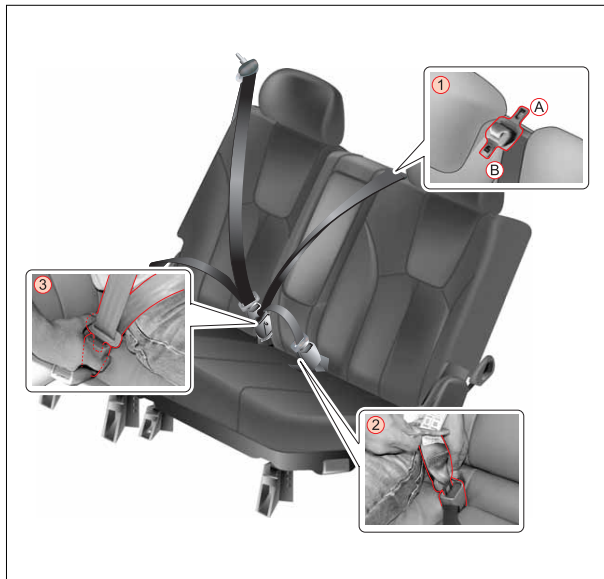
2. Insert the metal latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Position the belt as low as possible across your hips, not across your abdomen.

3. If the belt is too tight or slack on your hips, readjust the belt.

4. To unfasten the seat belt, press the red button on the buckle.



REAR CENTER SEAT BELT (3-POINT TYPE)*



1. Pull out the smaller latch plate (B) from upper retractor (1).
2. Insert it into the black buckle (2) until it clicks.
3. Pull out the bigger latch plate (A) and position the seat belt across your shoulder, chest and hips.
4. Insert it into the buckle (3) until it clicks.

⚠ WARNING

- Make sure to fasten the seat belt according to the order as described so that it functions properly.
- To prevent the seat belt from bumping against the rear glass, unfasten the seat belt while holding it.
- This seat belt is designed only for a passenger who sits on the center seat in the rear seat.
- Tug on the seat belt to make sure that the latch plate is securely locked.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Improper wearing of seat belts increases the chance of injury or death in case of a collision.
- Position the seat belt away from your neck and abdomen.

⚠ CAUTION

Stow the seat belt into the console when it is not in use.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

CHILD RESTRAINTS AND PREGNANT WOMAN

0 PREGNANT WOMEN

1 We recommend that pregnant women use the seat belts throughout their pregnancy. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

4 **WARNING**

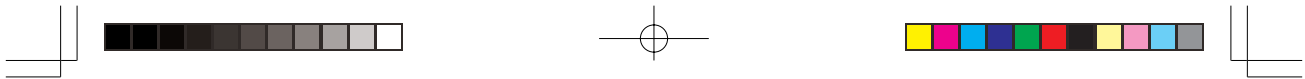
- Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug across the hips as possible.
- Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

CHILD RESTRAINTS

When transporting infants or small children, an appropriate child restraint system should always be used. The child restraint system should be appropriate for your child's weight and height and properly fit the car's seat. Accident statistics indicate that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seat rather than in the front seat.

WARNING

- Infants and tiny children should always be restrained in an infant or child restraint.
- NEVER INSTALL A REAR-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN THE FRONT SEAT WITH FRONT PASSENGER AIR BAG.
- A child in a rear-facing child restraint installed in the front seat can be seriously injured if the front passenger air bag inflates. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.
- A front-facing child restraint should be secured in the rear seat whenever possible. If installed in the front passenger seat, adjust the seat as far back as it will go.
- When installing a child restraint system, follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.
- In a collision an unrestrained child, even a tiny baby, can become a missile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap can become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are.
- Do not allow a child in the cargo areas while the vehicle is moving.
- If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back.
- Please note that the three point seat belt is designed for a person who is taller than 140 cm.



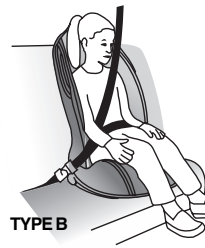
Rear-facing child seat



Forward-facing child seat



TYPE A



TYPE B

Booster seat



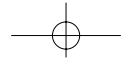
Mass Group	Restraint Device Figure	Front seat	Rear center seat	Rear side seat	Mounting Method of Vehicle
O ~ up to 10 kg (0 ~ 9 month)	Rear facing child seat	X	X	U	3-point belt rear-facing
O+ ~ up to 13 kg (0 ~ 2 year)	Rear facing child seat	X	X	U	3-point belt rear-facing
I ~ 9 to 18 kg (9 month ~ 4 year)	Forward facing child seat	UF	UF	U	2-or 3-point belt
II & III ~ 15 to 36 kg (4 year ~ 12 years)	Booster seat	UF	UF	U	2-or 3-point

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in the mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in the mass group.

L: Suitable for particular child restraints given on attached list. These restraints may be of the "semi-universal" categories.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in the mass group.



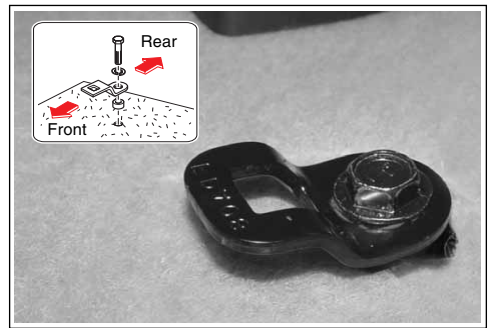
Child restraint anchor fittings have been installed to coincide with the rear seating positions as follows.

- WARNING**
- Unrestrained infants and small children could be injured.
 - Never transport them unless they are properly restrained.
 - Use restraint system which meet safety standard.
 - Follow directions provided by the manufacturer.

NOTE

Use the child restraint anchorage for designed purpose only.

CHILD RESTRAINT INSTALLATION



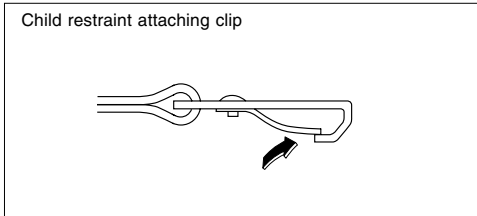
Your vehicle has been designed to accommodate a child restraint on the rear seat. When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitment carefully. When installing the child restraint, use the correct anchor bolt (5/16" bolt). The anchor bolt must be engaged at least 5 full threads in the anchorage.

The child restraint system should be secured in conjunction with the vehicle's seat belt. After installation, push and pull the child restraint to be sure it is secure. Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If you have any queries regarding the installation of a child restraint, consult a Ssangyong Dealer.

INSTALLATION OF THE ATTACHING CLIP

Child restraint attaching clip



Positive engagement of the child restraint attaching clip is achieved by depressing retainer spring and then opening of the anchor fitting as shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint system placed in the front seat could cause more serious injury or death

- NEVER INSTALL A REAR-FACING CHILD RESTRAINT IN FRONT SEAT WITH FRONT PASSENGER AIR BAG.

A child in a rear-facing child restraint installed in the front seat can be seriously injured if the front passenger air bag inflates. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat.

A front-facing child restraint should be secured in the rear seat whenever possible. If installed in the front passenger seat, adjust the seat as far back as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts or harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing a child restraint system, follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- When not in use, keep your child restraint system secured with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.
- Do not hold a child while riding in a vehicle.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat.
- Do not allow a child in the cargo areas while the vehicle is moving.
- Children who have outgrown child restraint systems should sit in the rear seat and be restrained with the seat belt.

If child's seating position has a shoulder belt which is on or very close to the face or neck, move the child close to the center of the vehicle, slightly inboard of the shoulder belt, or move the child to a position without a shoulder belt if possible.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

WARNINGS FOR SEAT BELT

⚠ WARNINGS FOR SEAT BELT

- Always put on your shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. Do not put the shoulder belt across your neck.
- Put the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. Do not put it across the waist. In an accident, the belt may apply pressure to your abdomen.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under the arm. It increases the danger of sliding out of the belt and can cause serious injury or even death. The belt may also tighten the chest which is not as strong as the shoulders. This may also result in serious internal injuries.
- Do not lock the seat belt with a clip or a clamp. If the seat belt is too loose, it may not protect your body from injury or death in an accident.
- Before driving, all occupants should wear the seat belts. Otherwise, occupants could be seriously injured in collisions or sudden maneuvers. In many countries, there are regulations regarding the use of the seat belts. Please observe local laws and regulations.
- Do not buck up two or more persons with one seat belt.
- Do not wear the seat belt over any hard or breakable objects in pockets or on clothes.
- An infant and tiny child must be restrained in a child restraint system. Note that the three point seat belt is designed for a person who is taller than 140 cm.
- Periodically check that the seat belt and its components work properly. A damaged seat belt can cause serious injuries. Repair or replace the damaged seat belt immediately at a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- The warning light comes on whenever the ignition is switched on. The light goes out when the driver's seat belt is securely fastened. If the light does not go off after fastening the seat belt, it means that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the seat belt system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Additional devices or accessories on the seat belt may result in improper operation. Do not add any adjusting devices which restrict the seat belt operation.
- Periodically inspect all parts of the belt and have the damaged parts replaced. The belt that has been overstretched in an accident must be replaced with a new one. Ssangyong recommends replacing all component parts of the seat belt after a collision. No replacement is required after a minor collision if a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center finds that no damage has occurred and everything is in proper working order. The seat belt components that were not used during a collision must also be inspected and replaced if they show signs of damage or faulty operation.
- Replace the entire seat belt assembly after a severe impact even if the damage is not obvious.

AIR BAG

The air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) can provide additional protection for the driver and passenger in the event of a collision.

0 Air Bag Warning Light



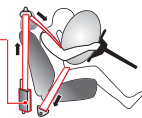
1 If this lamp does not go out after engine starting or comes on while driving, it means that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the air bag system checked immediately by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

7 Front Air Bag (Passenger's)

9 Side Air Bag (Passenger's)

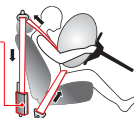
12 Operation of load limiter

13 After frontal collision, the load limiters releases the seat belt to prevent the occupant from being injured due to belt force.



13 Operation of pretensioner

14 When a severe frontal impact occurs, seat belt pretensioners rewind the seat belts immediately to restrain the occupants to their seats.



Driver's Air Bag

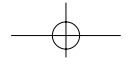
When a severe frontal impact occurs, sensors will cause the airbag to be deployed so that driver's and front passenger's head and chest will be pillowed by the air bag instead of hitting the steering wheel or dashboard.

Driver's Side Air Bag

The side air bags are integrated into the side wall (window side) of both front seats. The side air bag is designed to inflate only in certain side collision and protect occupants' head and chest.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (for front seats)

When a severe frontal impact occurs, seat belt pretensioners rewind the seat belts immediately to restrain the occupants to their seats. It helps the effective operation of the seat belts and air bags. The load limiter is integrated into each seat belt pretensioner.



SRS AIR BAG

The Supplemental Restraint System air bag is designed to supplement the seat belts and provide the driver and front passenger with protection against head, chest, and other injuries in the event of a collision. For maximum protection, seat belts should always be worn by all occupants.

⚠ WARNING

- The air bag system serves as a supplement to the seat belt. Make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly, even if air bags are installed in the vehicle.
- Depending on the severity or the angle of impact, the air bag may not deploy.
- The driver's and front passenger's air bags simultaneously deploy.

⚠ CAUTION

If you see "SRS" on a certain area, the air bag is contained underneath it. Therefore, do not apply any impact upon it and never place any accessories or objects on the area. And avoid any direct contact with the area.

Australia Only

: I/P inside panel



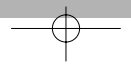
⚠ WARNING STATEMENT

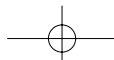
Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it.

⚠ WARNING

As a reminder of possible dangers of the air bag, air bag warning labels are affixed on the driver's and front passenger's sun visors.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





0 FRONT AIR BAGS



8 Passenger's Air Bag*

The front passenger's air bag is located on the dashboard.

Driver's Air Bag

The driver's air bag is located at center of the steering wheel.

12 Pretensioner (for Front Seat)

When front air bags deploy, the seat belt pretensioners simultaneously work too.

1st operation: When a severe frontal impact occurs, seat belt pretensioners rewind the seat belts immediately to restrain the occupants to their seats.

2nd operation: After frontal collision, the load limiters release the seat belt to prevent the occupant from being injured due to belt force.

Air Bag Operation

► The air bag inflates when:

- In response to a severe frontal impact, the driver's and front passenger's air bags deploy at the same time to supplement the seat belts to prevent or reduce any personal injuries.

► The air bag can inflate when:

- Underbody impact from the road surface; impact against the curb at a very high speed; dropping impact onto the road surface with a large angle

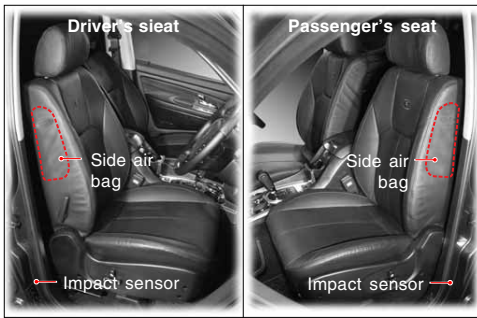
► The air bag does not inflate when:

- Rollover, side impact or rear impact
- If the severity of impact to the vehicle is not significant.

► The air bag seldom inflates when:

- Oblique impact, rollover
- Weak impact in which the sensor is unable to detect (under the inflation requirements)
- Impact against narrow objects such as a utility pole or a tree
- The vehicle falls into a drainage or a puddle
- The front of the vehicle crashes into a high impact point vehicle such as a truck
- Impact on the hood by falling stones
- The air bag warning lamp is on
- Moderate or severe impact to the middle of the vehicle body's side structure. In that case, only the side air bags deploy.

SIDE AIR BAG*



⚠ WARNING

- Do not apply any impact on the installation area of impact sensor. The air bag might deploy.
- Depending on the severity or the angle of impact, the side air bag may not deploy.
- Do not bang the door. The side air bag might deploy.
- Even though the front air bags and the pretensioners work at the same time, the side curtain air bags only deploy in a moderate to severe impact to the middle of the vehicle body's side structure.

Side Air Bag Operation

► The air bag inflates when:

- A moderate to severe impact to the middle of the vehicle body's side structure.

► The air bag can inflate when:

- Vehicle rolls onto its side and causes a severe side impact.

► The air bag does not inflate when:

- Frontal collision while vehicle stops or is moving at a low speed.
- Rear end collision
- If the severity of impact to the vehicle is not significant.

► The air bag seldom inflates when:

- Oblique impact (diagonal direction)
- Frontal impact or rear impact
- Rollover but without a severe impact
- The air bag warning lamp is on

AIR BAG INSPECTION

The air bag system should be inspected 10 years from its installation regardless of its appearance and other conditions.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

WARNINGS FOR AIR BAG

! WARNINGS FOR AIR BAG (I)

- Do not diagnose the circuit with a circuit tester. Do not attempt to modify any air bag components including the steering wheel, air bag mounting area, and harness.
- Incorrect air bag inspection can be dangerous and cause injuries. The air bag system must be disposed only by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Replace the steering wheel with only Ssangyong genuine parts.
- When the engine starts, the air bag warning lamp comes on for a system check. It goes out after 6 seconds when the system is normal. If this warning lamp stays on then the system may be defective. Have the air bag system checked immediately by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Never let small children or infants sit in the front passenger seat or be held in your arms. When the front air bags deploy, they could be seriously injured or killed.
- The child restraint system should be installed in the rear seat.
- The child restraint system must not be placed on the front seat. The infant or child can severely be injured by an air bag inflation in case of an accident.
- The seat belt and air bags are the most effective when you sit well back and upright in the seat.
- Do not move your seat too close to the steering wheel or dashboard. If you lower your head, the air bag can hit your head during inflation and can cause severe injury or even death.
- Do not impact any air bag components including the steering wheel, air bag mounting area, and harness by hand or tools. You may get injured by sudden deployment.
- The air bag contains explosive materials, so contact a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center when trashing or replacing it.
- The air bag components will be very hot after deployment. Do not touch them.
- Once the air bag system is triggered, the triggered air bag assembly should be removed from the vehicle and replaced with a new one.
- Do not attach any objects such as a sticker, scent bottle, or phone holder on the steering wheel pad and to the dashboard.
- Do not lean against the window or door or do not stretch your arm through the window frame. If the side air bag deploys, you will be at great risk.
- Do not place any objects between the side air bags and occupants. The object may prevent the air bag from deploying or can be shot at you.

Ventilation, Heating, Air Conditioning and Air Purification System

9

TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Heater/Air Conditioner System	9-2
● Warnings and Cautions	9-4
● Supplementary Heating Device	9-5
● Automatic Heater / Air Conditioner	9-6
● Rear Air Conditioner* (Dual A/C)	9-12
● Defogging and Defrosting	9-13
● Replacing Air Conditioner Filter	9-14
● AQS (Air Quality System)	9-16

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

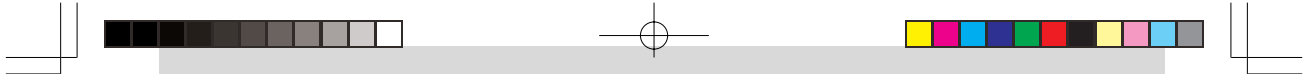
12

13

14

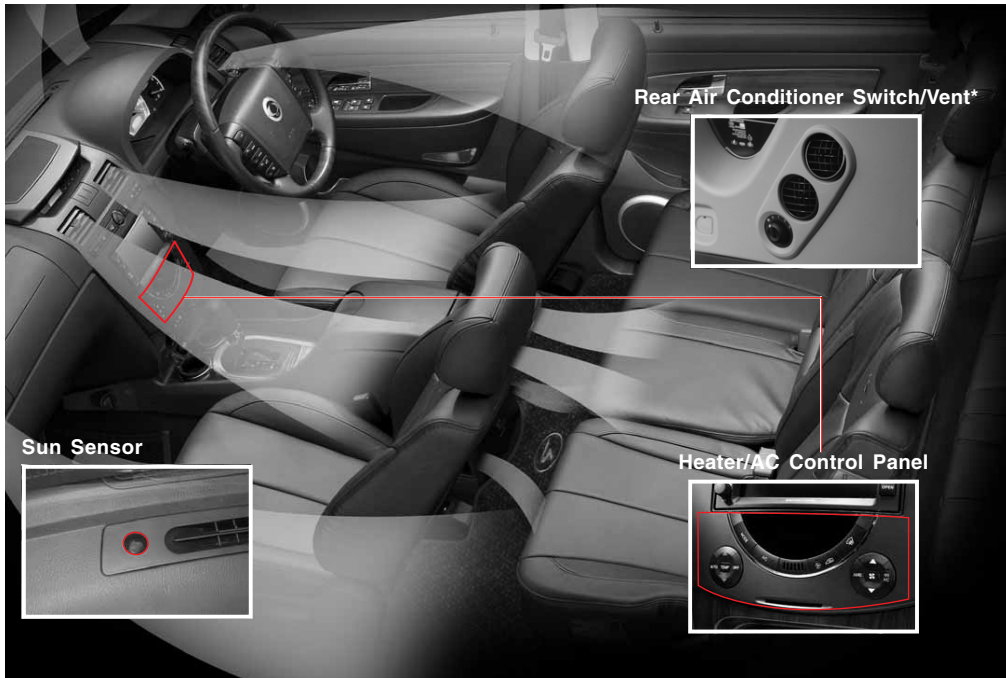
15

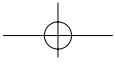
16



HEATER/AIR CONDITIONER SYSTEM

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



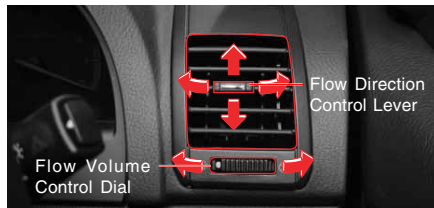


Front Center Vent



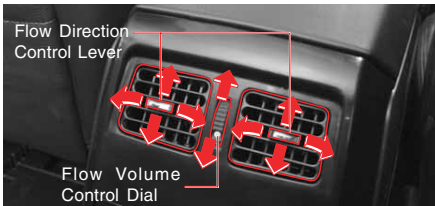
You can adjust the direction of the airflow by moving the knob horizontally or vertically.

Front Side Vent



You can adjust the direction of the airflow by moving the airflow direction control lever on the air outlet.
You can adjust the volume of airflow by moving the airflow volume control dial.

Rear Vents in Center Console (Upper)



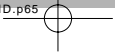
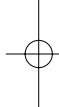
You can adjust the direction of the airflow by moving the airflow direction control lever on the air outlet.
You can adjust the volume of airflow by moving the airflow volume control dial.

Rear Vents in Center Console (Lower)



The airflow is delivered through the vents when operating A/C and heater.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

0 Refrigerant Specification & Capacity

Item		
Specification		R134a
Capacity	Single A/C	720 ± 30g
	Dual A/C	1,120 ± 30g

5 **⚠ WARNING**

- If you sleep while the air conditioner or heater is on, with all windows closed, you may suffocate to death.
- Continued operation in the recirculation mode may cause the interior to become stuffy and windows to fog. Do not use the recirculation mode for a long period of time.
- If exhaust gas comes in, there is danger of carbon monoxide poisoning. Be sure to switch back to fresh air mode after passing through an area of smoke or fumes.
- Never leave a child or a handicapped person alone in the vehicle with the air conditioner or heater on in hot or cold weather. The child or handicapped person can be in serious danger by the heat and lack of oxygen.

⚠ CAUTION

- If your vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight, open all windows to extract heat before turning on the air conditioning (A/C).
- Operating the air conditioning (A/C) for a long time while the vehicle is parked may cause the engine to overheat.
- When driving up a long hill for an extended period of time, turn on and off the air conditioner every 3 to 5 minutes.
- To prevent battery discharge, do not run the fan for an extended period of time when the engine is not running.
- To maintain the system at its optimum state and to keep the lubrication of the air conditioner compressor and related components, run the air conditioner at low speed once a week even during the season than summer.
- Do not stop the engine when the air conditioner is operating. It may produce an unpleasant odor trapped in the duct. Turn the A/C off and wait for a few minutes in the fresh air mode before stopping the engine.
- If you start the engine with the air conditioner on, the engine may not start easily and the engine idling can be unstable causing the vehicle to vibrate. Be sure to turn off electrical systems such as the fan.
- When the air conditioner is not used in periods, odors will come out. Run the air conditioner for 20 ~ 30 minutes with the windows opened and you could remove the odors.
- During the winter when the air conditioner is not used regularly, run the air conditioner once or twice every month for 5 ~ 10 minutes.
- If the air conditioner is not used regularly, the lubricant in the A/C compressor will not circulate causing the A/C to malfunction. Be sure to turn the air conditioner at low speed.
- When sharply accelerating the vehicle while the air conditioner is operating, you may hear a "click" sound from the magnetic clutch in compressor. This is a normal operation to protect the air conditioner system (by lowering the excessively high refrigerant pressure).

SUPPLEMENTARY HEATING DEVICE

- The vehicle equipped with the DI engine has the supplementary heating devices to increase the heating effect before the engine coolant fully warms up. The supplementary heating devices are as follows:
 - **PTC** (Positive Temperature Coefficient)

PTC


This supplementary heater is an electrical air heating type and installed on the heater outlet port. This device improves the heating effect by increasing the temperature of flowing air into the passenger room.

This device is operational/non-operational when the engine control unit supplies/cuts off the voltage to the PTC according to the coolant temperature and the ambient temperature.

► Operational Condition

This device is activated when the blower switch is at any position other than the "OFF" position and the coolant temperature and the ambient temperature is within a specified range.

► Non-operational Condition

- The blower switch is at the "OFF" position
- Defective ambient temperature sensor
- During engine cranking
- Battery voltage is too low
- During pre-glowing process ( indicator ON)

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

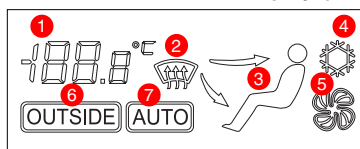
15

16

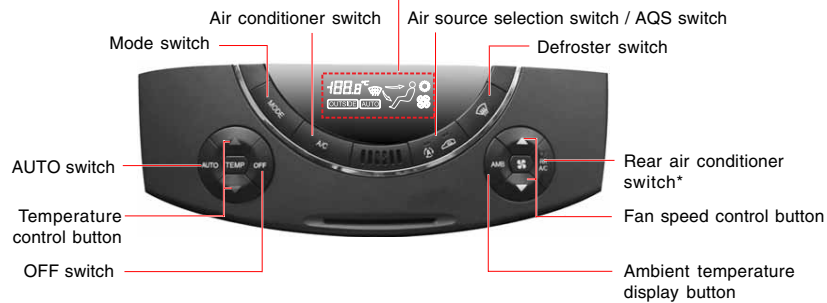
AUTOMATIC HEATER / AIR CONDITIONER

If the Auto button is pressed, the temperature of the passenger compartment is automatically maintained according to the set temperature. By operating the relevant switch of the automatic air conditioner, you may also manually control the air conditioner operation, air flow direction, fan speed and air source. To turn off the air conditioner and heater, press the "OFF" button. The desired room temperature can be set up by turning the temperature control switch.

Vacuum Fluorescent Display (VFD)



1. Temperature display (ambient temperature, set temperature)
2. Defroster indicator
3. Air flow indicator
4. A/C ON indicator
5. Fan speed indicator
6. Ambient temperature display
7. Auto mode indicator

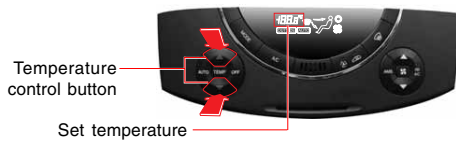


AUTO OPERATION MODE (AUTO INDICATOR ON)

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. AUTO indicator is displayed on the VFD.



3. Set the desired room temperature with the temperature control button.
4. The temperature of the passenger compartment is automatically maintained according to the set temperature.



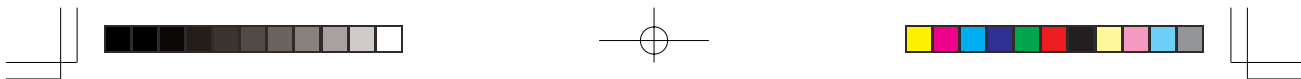
MANUAL OPERATION MODE (AUTO INDICATOR OFF)

When you use the fan speed control switch, air conditioner switch, recirculation switch or mode switch during the auto operation mode, the "AUTO" indicator on the VFD goes out and the air conditioner system can be controlled manually. In manual mode, the "AUTO" indicator on display does not come on and you have to adjust the airflow direction, airflow volume, and temperature you want.

NOTE

To resume the auto operation mode, press AUTO switch.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Auto Switch

When you press the Auto Switch, the "AUTO" indicator is displayed on the VFD and the temperature of the passenger compartment is automatically maintained according to the set temperature. When you press the Auto Switch during manual operation mode, the system is changed to the auto operation mode.

Fan Speed Control Button

To control the fan speed, press the switch as needed. When pressing the switch in the Auto mode, the "AUTO" indicator goes out and the system is changed to the manual mode.

CAUTION
If the air conditioner switch is turned off, the air conditioner does not work even when the fan is running. However, the air flows due to fan operation.



Rear Air Conditioner Switch*

To operate the rear air conditioner, this switch should be pressed before turning the rear air flow control dial.

Temperature Control Button

To adjust the temperature and fan speed, press the switch as needed.

OFF Switch

To stop the air conditioner / heater operation, press this switch.

Ambient Temperature Display Button

When you press this button, the "AMB" indicator appears and the ambient temperature is displayed on the VFD for about 5 seconds.

CAUTION
The actual ambient temperature may not be displayed correctly due to engine heat or ground heat.

Air Conditioner Switch

When you press this switch, the A/C indicator (⚙️) comes on and the air conditioner starts to operate. When you press the switch again, the air conditioner stops operation and the indicator goes out.

Air Source Selection Switch / AQS Switch

To switch over the air conditioner mode to a specific mode (air recirculation, fresh air intake, AQS ON or OFF), use this switch. For detailed information of switch functions and AQS system, refer to AQS system in this section.

⚠️ CAUTION

To change the air source selection mode in auto operation mode, press the air source selection switch after changing to the manual operation mode.



Air Source Selection and AQS Operation



- AQS ON
- Fresh air intake



- AQS ON
- Air recirculation



- AQS OFF
- Air recirculation

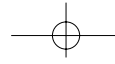


- AQS OFF
- Fresh air intake

AQS

AQS automatically adjusts from the fresh air intake mode to the recirculation mode when polluted air is detected by the AQS sensor.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

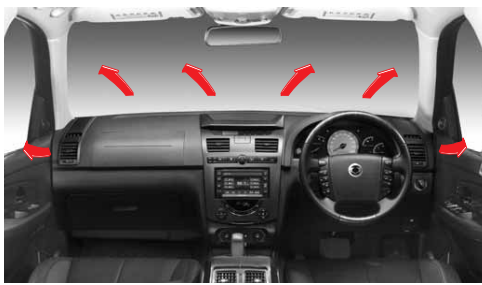
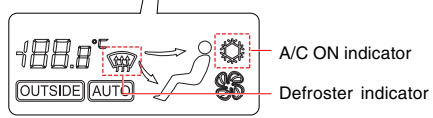


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



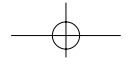
Defroster Switch

Use this switch for quick defrosting. When you press this switch, the airflow direction will be changed to the windshield and door glasses, the air conditioner operates automatically, and outside air comes in. If you press the switch again during its operation, the indicator (**AUTO**) goes off. When the defrosting is complete, press the switch to return to normal operations.



Automatic Selection of the Fresh or Air Recirculation Mode

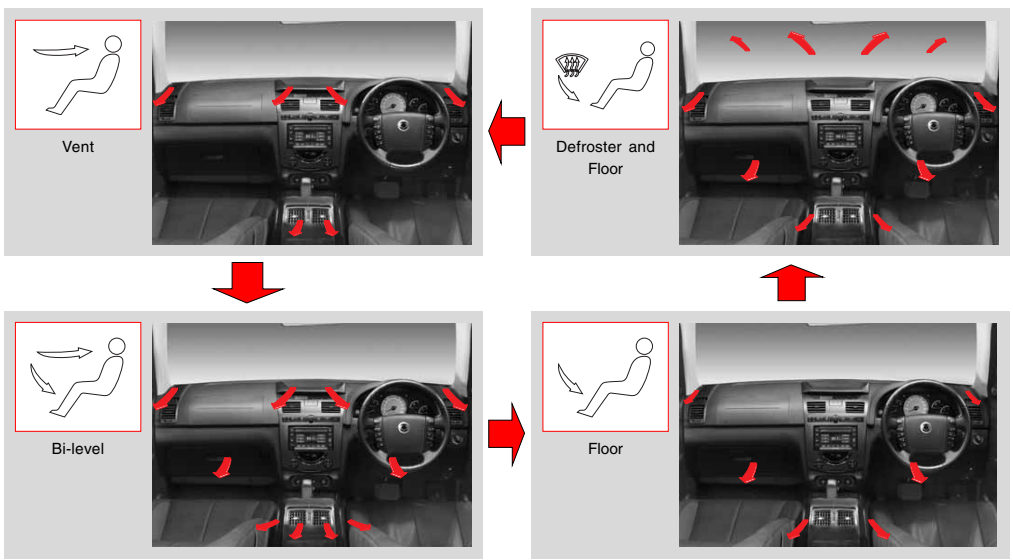
1. When the defroster switch () is pressed, outside air automatically comes in. When the switch is pressed again, the previous mode will be restored.
2. If the AQS system is operating (AQS indicator ON), AQS automatically adjusts from the fresh air mode to the recirculation mode when polluted air is detected by the AQS sensor.



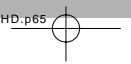
Mode Switch

When you press this switch each time, the air flow mode will be changed to another mode and displayed as shown in the figure.

When you press this switch in the auto air conditioner operation ("AUTO" indicator ON), the system is changed to the manual air conditioner mode ("AUTO" indicator OFF).



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

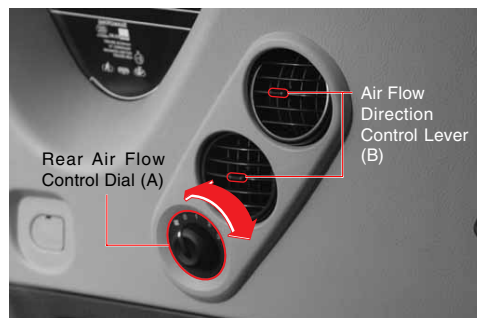


REAR AIR CONDITIONER* (DUAL A/C)

Operation of Rear Air Conditioner



Rear A/C switch



Rear Air Flow Control Dial (A)

Air Flow Direction Control Lever (B)

1. Press the rear air conditioner switch.
2. Turn the rear air flow control dial (A) to any position (1 ~ 3) from "0" position.
3. Adjust the air flow direction with the flow direction control lever (B).

CAUTION

- If the rear air conditioner switch in front control panel is turned off, the rear air conditioner does not work even when the rear air flow control dial is operated. However, the air flows due to fan operation.
- The rear air conditioner is only for air cooling. It does not include the air heating function.

DEFOGGING AND DEFROSTING

Inside of the Windshield

1. Press the defroster switch.
2. Adjust the fan speed with the fan speed control.
3. To quickly remove the moisture on the glass, set the fan speed button at a high speed position.
4. To prevent fog from forming on the glass, setting the air source selection switch to the fresh air intake mode is recommended.

Outside of the Windshield

1. Press the defroster switch.
2. Adjust the fan speed with the fan speed control.
3. To quickly remove the frost on the glass, set the fan speed button at a high speed position.
4. Set the temperature control switch to a hot position.

WARNING

- When it rains and is very humid, you may have fog on the windshield and windows. The fog will block your view through all windows and can create a dangerous situation. To prevent any fog on the glass, setting the air source selection switch to the fresh air intake mode is recommended.

NOTE

- When you press this defrost switch, the air conditioner turns on automatically and the system selects the fresh air intake mode.

Automatic Heater & Air Conditioner



Defroster switch

CAUTION

- An extended air conditioner operation in the bi-level mode or defrost mode may cause the outside glass to fog due to the high temperature difference between the inside and the outside of the vehicle. In this case, change the air flow to the fresh air intake mode and set the fan at a low speed.
- Especially in winter or summer, to avoid glass fogging, remove any obstacles such as snow or leaves on the air inlets.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REPLACING AIR CONDITIONER FILTER

0 Replace the Air Conditioner Filter When

- 1 • Unpleasant odor is generated at the first operation after a long unused period.
- 2 • Cooling and blowing capacity have decreased.

3 **CAUTION**

- 4 • Do not apply excessive force to the holders when removing the glove box. It may cause a deformation of holders and results in a loose installation.
- 5 • Replace both air conditioner filters at the same time while paying attention to the installing direction.

6 **CAUTION**

- 7 • Replace the air conditioner filter at every 10,000 km of driving. However, if the vehicle is operated under severe conditions, such as on dusty or unpaved roads, and excessive air conditioner or heater use, the replacement interval can be shortened.
- 8 • When the filter is contaminated, it will decrease the cooling or heating capacity of the system and creates unpleasant odors.

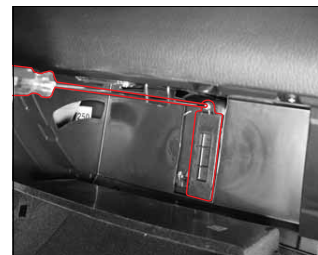
7 Replacement of A/C Filter



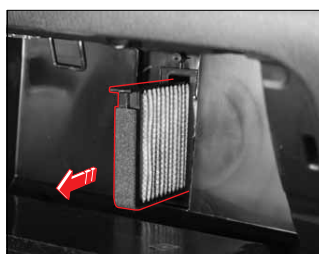
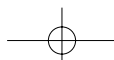
9 1. Open the glove box.



10 2. Remove the glove box from the dash panel by moving the glove box holders at both sides in the direction of the arrow.



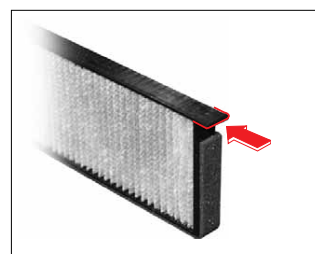
11 3. Unscrew the bolts and remove the air conditioner filter cover.



4. Pull out the first filter.



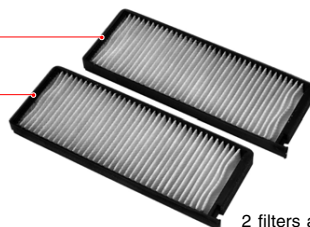
5. Lift up the second filter and remove it.



6. Install new filter while the protruding section (arrow) of the filter faces upward.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

A/C filter



2 filters as a set

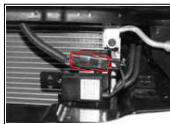
AQS (AIR QUALITY SYSTEM)



**Air Source Selection Switch/
AQS Switch**



AQS Sensor



AQS System?

AQS automatically adjusts from the fresh air intake mode to the recirculation mode when polluted air is detected by the AQS sensor. The air source selection returns back to the fresh air intake mode if a certain time passes or the polluted air has disappeared.

In Auto Mode (AUTO indicator ON)

Whenever you press the AQS switch, the AQS switches over between ON and OFF. When the AQS is turned on, the air source selection is changed to air recirculation mode automatically. It cannot be changed to the fresh air intake mode manually.

In Manual Mode (AUTO indicator OFF)

Whenever you press the Air source selection switch / AQS switch, the system is switched to fresh air intake, air recirculation, and AQS ON mode in order.

Indications of AQS Switch



- AQS ON
- Fresh air intake



- AQS ON
- Air recirculation



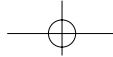
- AQS OFF
- Air recirculation



- AQS OFF
- Fresh air intake

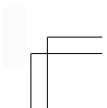
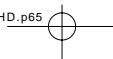
CAUTION

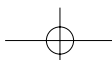
To change the air source selection mode in auto operation mode, press the air source selection switch after changing to the manual operation mode.



MEMO

Series of horizontal lines for writing notes.





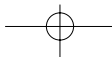
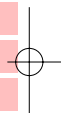
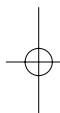
Turbocharger System

10

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- Cautions in Using the Turbocharger 10-2
- Preventive Maintenance 10-3
- Turbocharger Inspection 10-4

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



CAUTIONS IN USING THE TURBOCHARGER

0 WHAT IS THE TURBOCHARGER?

1 Turbochargers are based on the gas turbine engine technology, but operate under considerably greater pressure. The turbocharger consists of two turbo elements, a turbine and a compressor, both of which are driven from the main center shaft. The turbine rotates between 50,000 ~ 160,000 spins per minute and uses the energy of the exhaust gas to drive the compressor. The compressor, in turn, draws in fresh air which it supplies to the cylinders in the form of compressed air. As more fuel is drawn into the engine, output performance is boosted between 15 ~ 30% in comparison to a non-turbocharged engine.

10 Advantages of a turbocharger

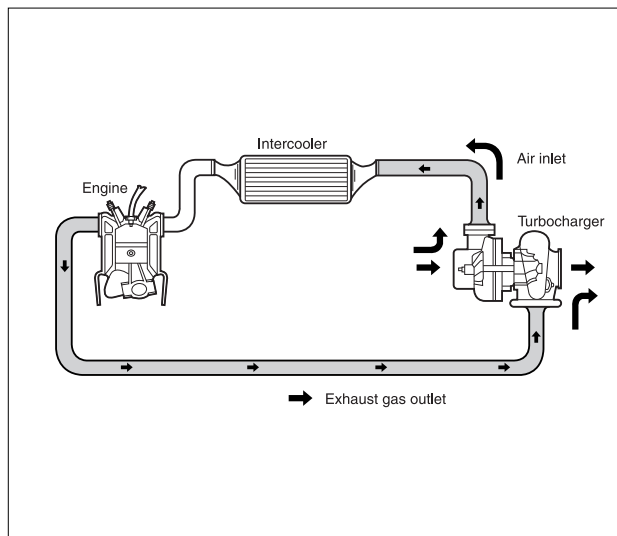
11 Turbocharger helps the engine operate more smoothly and with greater efficiency.

- 12 • Increase specific power
- 13 • Compensate for power loss at high altitude
- 14 • Reduce emissions

14 What is the intercooler?

15 The intercooler cools down the compressed air temperature to increase the engine power by increasing the air density.

16



PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

The vehicle owner should be encouraged to observe the following precautions to ensure maximum turbocharger service life.

CAUTION

- Operate the engine over the idling speed only after normal engine oil pressure has been established. Forcing the turbocharger to operate before the bearings are adequately lubricated creates unnecessary friction.
- Take steps to reduce temperature and speeds from their maximum before shutting down the engine.

The engine equipped with turbocharger develops much more heats than a normal engine, so when the engine is stopped abruptly, the oil in the bearings may evaporate due to heats and can be stuck.

- Use only the specified engine oil and observe inspection and replacement intervals.

CAUTION

- At low ambient temperature, or when ever the vehicle has not been used for a long period, normal engine oil pressure and flow is affected. Under these conditions the engine should be started and allowed to idle for a few minutes before operating at higher rpm.
- Avoid long periods of engine idling. The combination of low-pressures in the turbine and compressor may allow oil to seep past the seal into the turbine or the compressor.
- The turbocharger may need to be pre-oiled after oil change or any service that involves oil draining. Crank the engine a few times before allowing start, then start the engine and allow it to idle for a period to establish full oil circulation and pressure before operating at higher rpm.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

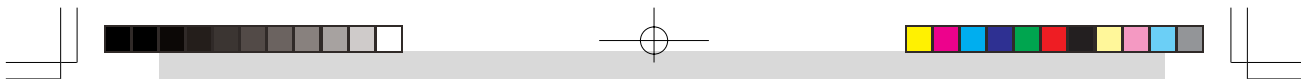
15

16

REXTON II

TURBO CHARGER SYSTEM

10-3



TURBOCHARGER INSPECTION

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

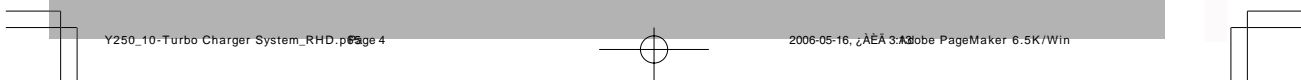
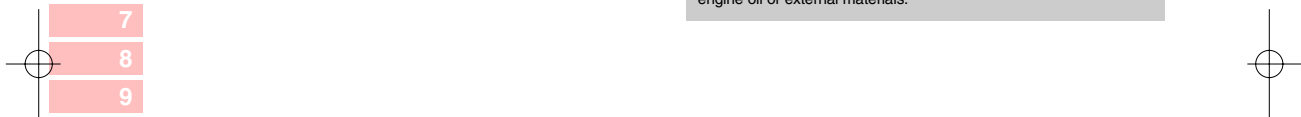
Good maintenance practices should be observed, particularly regarding air filtration, oil quality and filtration. These areas are important because of a turbocharger's operating speed. Proper operating procedures and preventive maintenance practices enhance good turbocharger's service life and performance. The contaminated air cleaner can damage the turbocharger seriously, so frequently check the air cleaner and observe the replacement intervals.

WARNING

Operating the turbocharger system without the intake and exhaust manifold mounting can result in severe engine damage. The turbocharger should be operated when every device is normally installed.

NOTE

The most defectives in turbocharger are turbine blade damages or compressor bearing sticks due to lack of oil supply, contaminated engine oil or external materials.



Convenience Devices

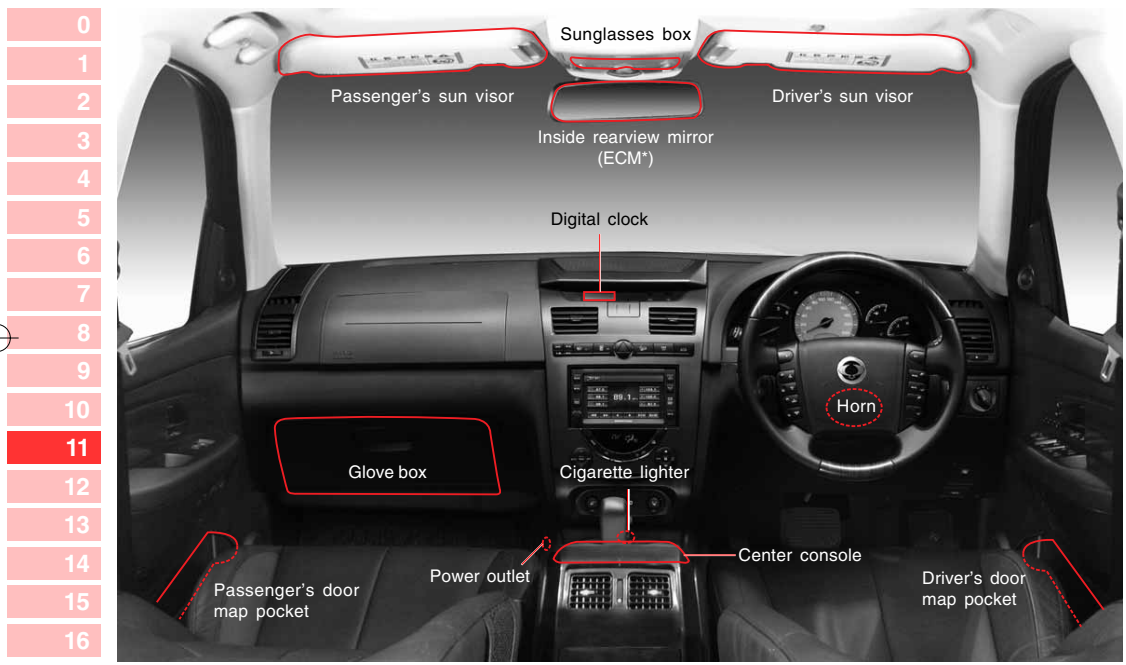
11

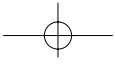
TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Storage Boxes and Convenience Device .	11-2	● Seatback Pocket	11-13
● Tilttable Steering Wheel and Horn	11-4	● Sun Visors	11-14
● Inside Rearview Mirror	11-5	● Front Room Lamps/Sunglasses Storage	11-15
● Storage Bin for Portable Electronic Device/ Ticket Holder/AV Jack	11-6	● Center and Rear Room Lamps/ Assist Grip	11-16
● Front Cup Holder/Cigarette Lighter	11-7	● Storage Box in Luggage Compartment/ Luggage Net	11-17
● Center Console	11-8	● Rear Heated Glass & Antenna/ Movable Ashtray	11-19
● Power Outlet	11-9	● AV* & Navigation System*	11-20
● Glove Box/Front Luggage Net	11-10		
● Courtesy Lamp/Luggage Tray under Passenger's Seat	11-11		
● Rear Cup Holder/Jack Storage/ DVD Changer/Navigation Unit Storage ...	11-12		

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

STORAGE BOXES AND CONVENIENCE DEVICE

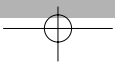
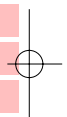
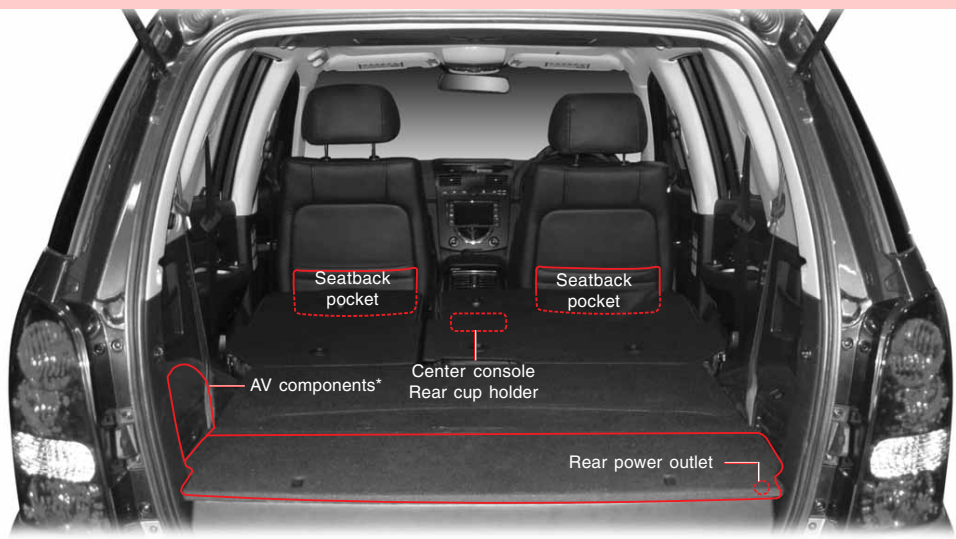




⚠ WARNING

- Driving with any storage box open can cause injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop. Keep all the storage boxes closed while driving.
- Do not store any flammable items or disposable lighters in the console box or other space. In hot weather, they can explode and cause a fire.
- When vehicle is in motion, liquid may spill out. Spilled liquid can damage the vehicle and cause burns if it is hot. Do not use the cup holder while vehicle is in motion. Therefore, do not put any cup with hot liquid into the cup holder.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



TILTABLE STEERING WHEEL AND HORN

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

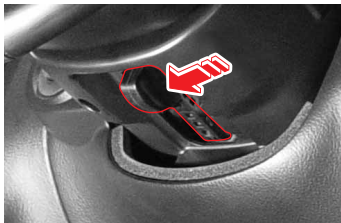
13

14

15

16

Tiltable Steering Wheel



To adjust the steering wheel, push the control lever to right, adjust the wheel up or down to the proper position, release the control lever to lock the wheel in place.

After adjustment, make sure that the steering wheel is securely fixed.

WARNING

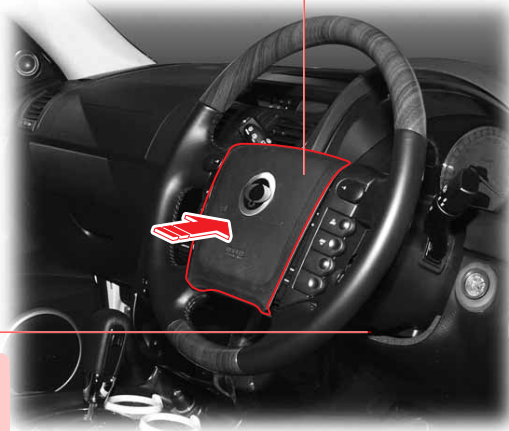
- Do not adjust the steering wheel while your vehicle is moving. Otherwise, control of your vehicle can be lost.
- Before driving, make sure that the steering wheel is locked.

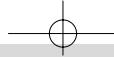
Horn

Press the horn pad on the steering wheel to sound the horn.

CAUTION

The sound of the horn can startle pedestrians. Use only when needed.

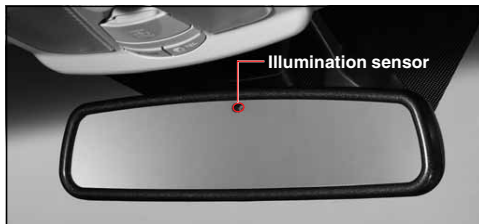




INSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR

The inside rearview mirror can be adjusted up, down or side ways to obtain the best rear view.

ECM (ANTI-GLARE AUTO ADJUSTMENT FUNCTION)*



The reflection rate of the inside rearview mirror can be automatically adjusted by the light intensity from a vehicle behind you.

CAUTION

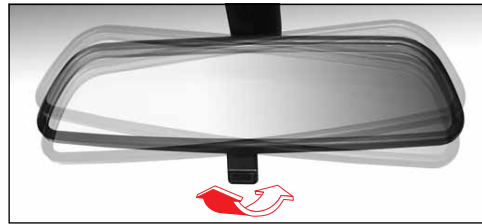
Under the following conditions, automatic anti-glare function may not operate properly.

- When the rear vehicle's headlamp is not beamed directly to the inside rearview mirror's sensor.
- When the rear window has a dark tinted glass.
- When the gear selector lever is in the R position, automatic anti-glare function will be cancelled to obtain the best rearview.
- For your safety, never adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

- The electrolyte may come out when the mirror is broken. Do not allow it to contact your skin or eyes. If you accidentally get it in your eyes, flush with water and see your doctor.
- For your safety, adjust the mirror before driving off the vehicle.

MANUAL TYPE INSIDE REARVIEW MIRROR



Manual Day/Night Adjustment

You can manually adjust the rearview mirror by pushing or pulling its adjusting lever to avoid blindness at night due to other vehicles behind you.

CAUTION

When you are not able to see the back of your vehicle at night, adjust the rearview mirror by holding the mirror body and pushing or pulling it to a desired angle so that you can secure a clear rear view.

WARNING

For your safety, adjust the mirror before driving off the vehicle.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

CONVENIENCE DEVICES

11-5

STORAGE BIN FOR PORTABLE ELECTRONIC DEVICE/TICKET HOLDER/AV JACK

0 STORAGE BIN FOR PORTABLE ELECTRONIC DEVICE



The storage bin for portable electronic device is located on the center instrument cluster. Keep your cellular phone or MP3 player in the storage bin as shown in figure. Some models may not be inserted into the storage bin due to the size.

13 **CAUTION**

Make sure that any button on the electronic device is not pressed in the holder. Also, be careful not to damage the surface of the electronic device.

TICKET HOLDER/AV JACK*



Ticket Holder

Tickets and cards can be stored.

AV Jack

External audio and video device (camcorder, digital camera etc.) can be connected to the AV system in vehicle through this jack.

FRONT CUP HOLDER/CIGARETTE LIGHTER

FRONT CUP HOLDER



Front cup holders are installed at the front side of center console.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle suddenly brakes or starts, liquid may spill.
- Danger of burning! Do not store a hot beverage in the cup holder.



To hold a smaller cup and can, use the additional pad (A) as shown in figure.

CIGARETTE LIGHTER



To operate the cigarette lighter, press it in all the way down. When it becomes heated, it automatically pops out and is ready for use.

WARNING

- When the cigarette lighter does not automatically pop up after 30 seconds, there is a danger of overheating. If this happens, pull it out and have the problem corrected by Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- Inserting your finger into the cigarette lighter outlet can cause burns or electric shock.
- The barrel of the cigarette lighter becomes very hot when it is fully charged. When touched by or dropped on bare skin, this may cause burns. Dropping the hot lighter can cause damage to a car seat or even start a fire.

CAUTION

Do not tap the cigarette lighter strongly to clean up. That may damage the coil.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

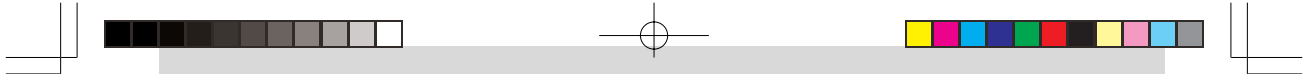
15

16

REXTON II

CONVENIENCE DEVICES

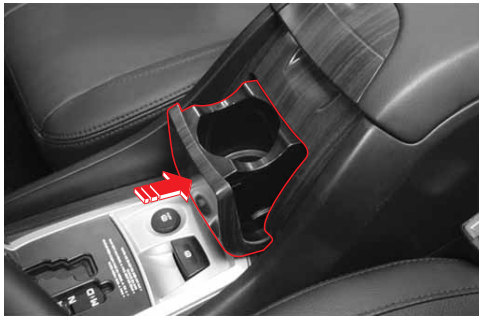
11-7



CENTER CONSOLE

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

CUP HOLDER

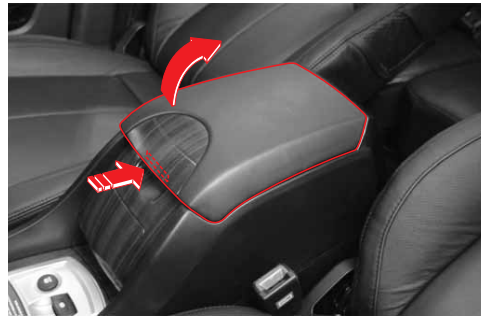


To use the cup holder, push the outer surface.
Push it in when not in use.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle suddenly brakes or starts, liquid may spill.
- Danger of burning! Do not store a hot beverage in the cup holder.

STORAGE BIN



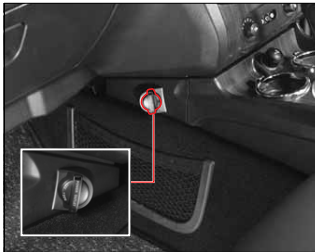
Push the button and lift the cover lid to open in order to store small items.

CAUTION

Do not store any flammables including disposable lighters in the console box or other space. In hot weather, they may explode and cause a fire.

POWER OUTLET

FRONT POWER OUTLET



The front power outlet is installed at the left side of passenger's footwell.

CENTER POWER OUTLET



The center power outlet is installed at the rear side of center console.

REAR POWER OUTLET



The rear power outlet is installed at the right side of storage box in luggage compartment.

An auxiliary power outlet for extra electrical devices is installed. This power outlet supplies power when the ignition key is in the "ACC" or "ON" position.

CAUTION

Keep the power outlet cover closed if not in use. Electrical defects can occur if objects other than power outlet plugs or water gets in. This will prevent the socket from becoming clogged or short circuiting.

WARNING

- For the extra electrical devices, you must use this power outlet. If you alter the vehicle's wire lines and leave the wires to hang freely, it could cause an accident like a fire.
- Abide by the nominal capacity of 120W.
- Do not put a finger into the outlet. It may cause an electric shock.
- The battery can be discharged if the power outlet is used excessively when the engine is not running.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

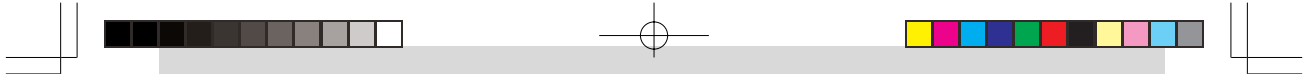
15

16

REXTON II

CONVENIENCE DEVICES

11-9



GLOVE BOX/FRONT LUGGAGE NET

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

GLOVE BOX



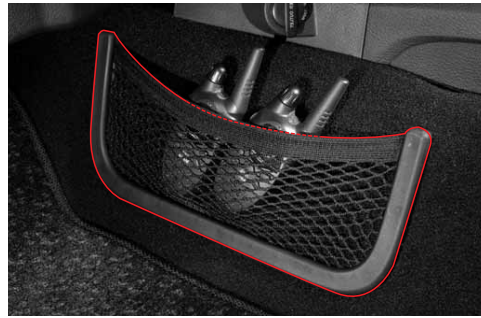
Pull up on the lever to open the glove box. Items can be stored.

When the tail lights are on and the glove box is open, the glove box inner lamp comes on.

CAUTION

- Driving with the glove box lid open can cause injury in case of an accident or a sudden stop. Keep glove box lid closed when driving.
- Do not store any flammables including a disposable lighter in the console box or glove box. In hot weather, it may explode and cause a fire.

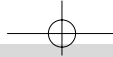
FRONT LUGGAGE NET



The luggage net is installed at the left side of passenger's footwall.

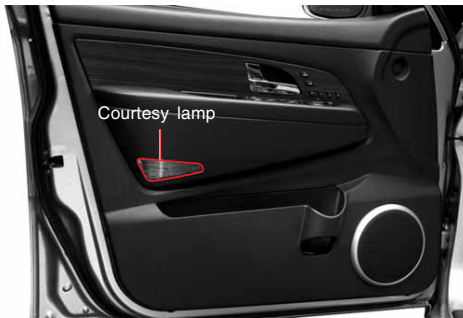
CAUTION

- Do not put in a big belonging that could damage the net.



COURTESY LAMP/LUGGAGE TRAY UNDER PASSENGER'S SEAT

COURTESY LAMP



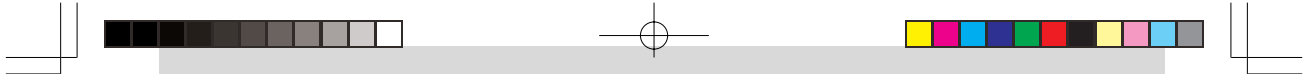
The courtesy lamp comes on when opening the door and goes out when closing it.

LUGGAGE TRAY* UNDER PASSENGER'S SEAT



If the passenger's seat is a manual operation type and the vehicle does not have an AV system, there is a luggage tray under the passenger's seat.

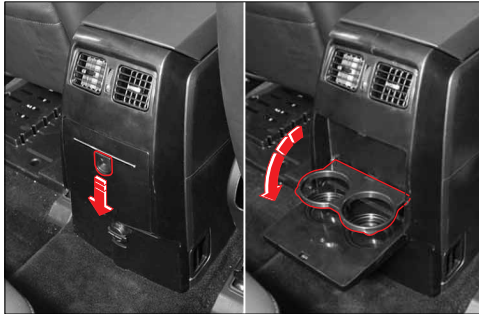
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



REAR CUP HOLDER/JACK STORAGE/DVD CHANGER/NAVIGATION UNIT STORAGE

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

REAR CUP HOLDER



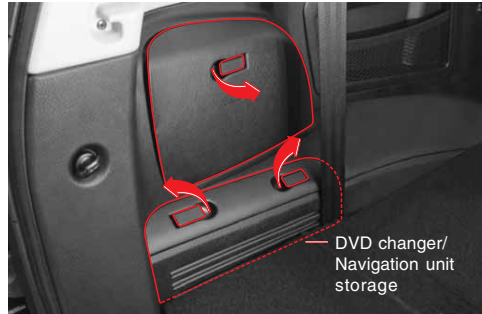
The rear cup holder is located at the rear side of center console.

To use it, pull the cover down while pulling down the lever. Close it when not in use.

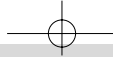
⚠ CAUTION

- When the vehicle suddenly brakes or starts, the liquid may spill.
- Danger of burning! Do not store a hot beverage in the cup holder.

DVD CHANGER* / NAVIGATION UNIT* STORAGE



The jack storage and the navigation unit/DVD changer storage are located at the left side of luggage compartment.



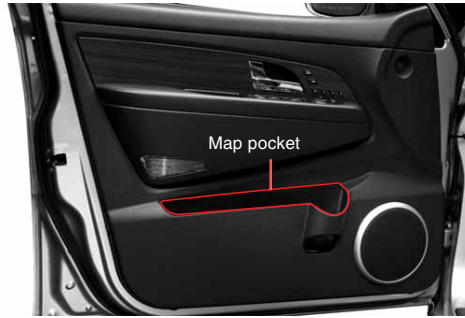
SEATBACK POCKET/MAP POCKET

SEATBACK POCKET



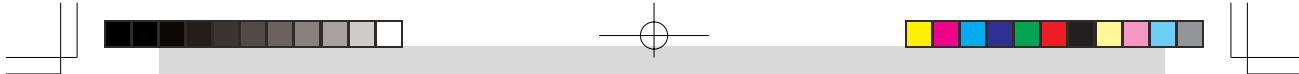
Storage pocket is installed at the rear side of front seat. Use it to put personal belongings.

MAP POCKET



The map pocket is located on each front door. Maps, magazines, newspapers, and other items can be stored.

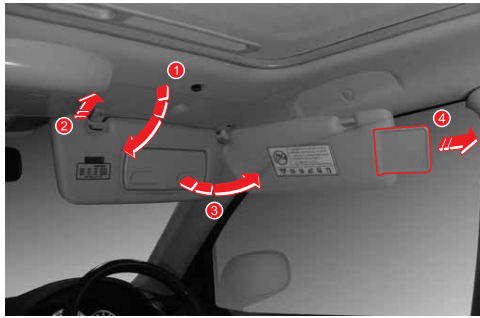
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



SUN VISORS

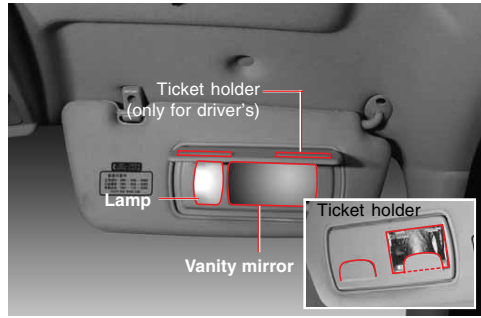
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

SUN VISORS



Sun visors are installed on the roof trim above the driver's and passenger's seat. Swing the sun visor down or to the left (right), if necessary.

TICKET HOLDER/VANITY MIRROR AND LAMP



The driver's sun visor has a ticket holder on its back side. Swing the sun visor down and open the cover to reveal the mirror.

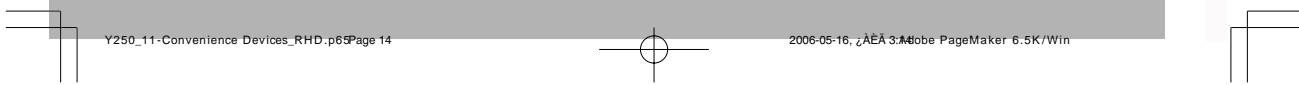
The vanity mirror comes on only when opening the cover.

CAUTION

Do not operate the sun visor, vanity mirror or ticket holder while driving. It may cause an unexpected accident.

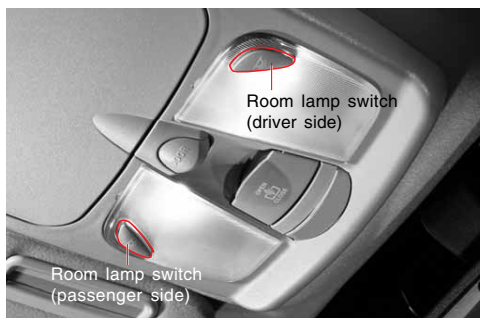
11-14 CONVENIENCE DEVICES

REXTON II



FRONT ROOM LAMPS/SUNGLASSES STORAGE

FRONT ROOM LAMP



When the switch is pressed, the appropriate front room lamp is turned on. When pressed it again, the lamp goes out.

CAUTION

Do not turn on the room lamp for a long period of time with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

SUNGLASSES STORAGE



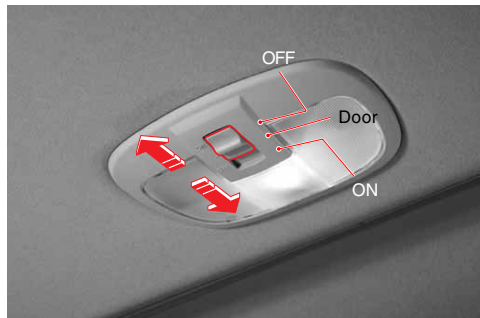
Sunglasses storage is located in the overhead console. Press the top side of the cover to open it. To close it, push the cover up until you hear the "click" sound.

CAUTION

- If glasses falls down, it may be damaged. Fix it firmly.
- The unclosed console can block your rearview. Also, the console can injure you in an accident or a sudden stop. Therefore, close the console before driving off your vehicle.
- Do not store any item that can be deformed in a hot temperature.
- Do not store any heavy items inside the console. When it falls out of the console, occupants may get injuries.

CENTER AND REAR ROOM LAMPS/ASSIST GRIP

0 CENTER AND REAR ROOM LAMPS



ASSIST GRIP

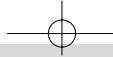


The room lamps are operated by room lamp switch.

If the center room lamp switch is at "Door" position; the center room lamp is turned on when opening a rear door. It goes out when closing the door.

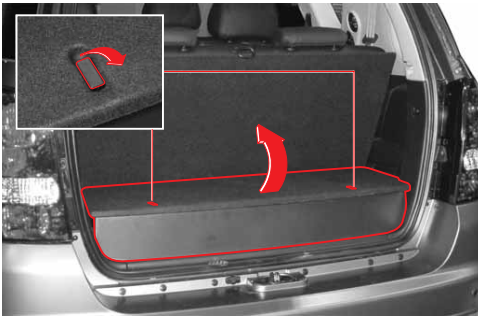
If the rear room lamp switch is at "Door" position; the rear room lamp is turned on when opening the tailgate. It goes out when closing the tailgate.

Your vehicle has assist grips above the front passenger's door and the rear doors. The coat hook is installed only on the grip above rear light door.



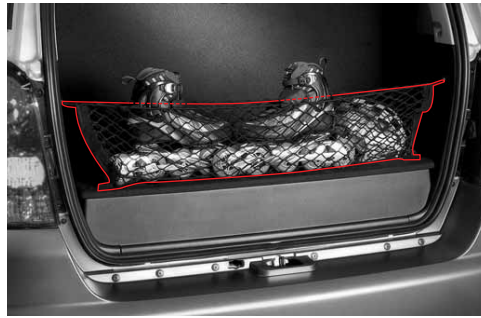
STORAGE BOX IN LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT/LUGGAGE NET

STORAGE BOX IN LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT



To use the storage box in luggage compartment, release the lock on the cover and open the cover.

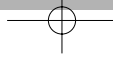
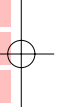
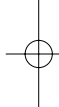
LUGGAGE NET

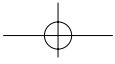


Any possibly moving objects during driving can be stored in the luggage net.

Hook the net up to the luggage compartment.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16





0 LUGGAGE COVER (EXCEPT FOR 7-SEATER)

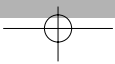
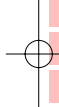
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



NOTE
Store the luggage cover separately to use the luggage room of the vehicle wide.

CAUTION
Don't put anything on the luggage cover.

- When Unrolling the Luggage Cover**
Pull the handle of the luggage cover at the center, and fix it into the grooves at left and right sides of quarter trim inner panels.
- When Rolling the Luggage Cover**
Take the luggage cover out of the grooves by pulling the handle and let go the grasp slightly to roll the luggage cover.
- When Removing the Luggage Cover**
After tearing off the edge of luggage cover at the back of rear seat, remove the luggage cover assembly by raising up it from the fixing holder's grooves.



REAR HEATED GLASS & ANTENNA/MOVABLE ASHTRAY

REAR DEFOGGER AND ANTENNA

Heating grids and
radio antenna



The radio antenna and heating grids are installed on the tailgate glass.

Be careful not to damage the heating grids and antenna while cleaning the inside of the window.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not coat the tailgate window and side windows with any after-market products, especially a metal anti-glare film or a two-tone film. When it is used on the windows, the sensitivity of the heating grids and antenna can be deteriorated.

REMOVABLE ASHTRAY



Solar Battery Ashtray*



General Ashtray

If you open the lid at night or in a dark area, the ashtray light will light up inside the ashtray.

The solar removable ashtray's battery is automatically charged under a certain degree of illumination. On the other hand, the general removable ashtray's battery should be replaced with a new one when the battery's power is used up.

Battery type: CR2032

⚠ WARNING

To avoid danger of fire, do not accumulate inflammable materials, such as garbage or cigarette butts, in your ashtray and make sure the cigarettes are full extinguished.

⚠ CAUTION

The LED illuminator inside of the ashtray has an electronic circuit and is not water-proof. Any impact on it or water will damage the unit.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

CONVENIENCE DEVICES

11-19

AV* & NAVIGATION SYSTEM*

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

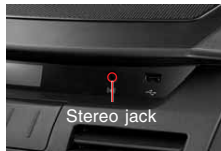
13

14

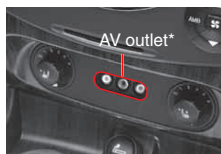
15

16

You can hear the music through the speakers on your vehicle by connecting the external audio device (MP3 player, CD player etc.) to this jack.

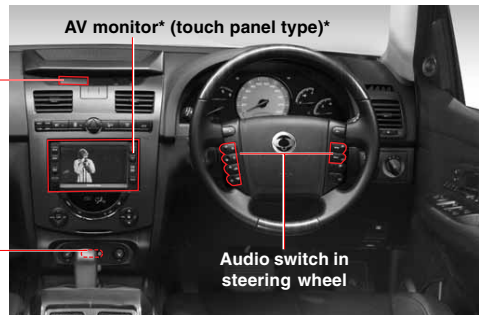


You can use the digital camera, camcorder, or external audio device by connecting them to the AV outlet (only for the vehicle with AV system).



AUDIO OUTLET AND ANTENNA

AV monitor* (touch panel type)*

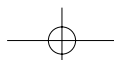


Navigation antenna*

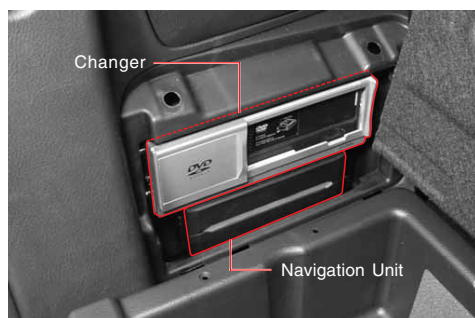


CAUTION

Placing the device to send and receive radio waves near the antenna may adversely affect the normal operation of antenna, or the navigation system may not work.



CHANGER* / NAVIGATION UNIT*



Changer and navigation unit is installed in the left bottom on the rear of the vehicle. To access the changer and navigation unit, open the storage cover and unlock the two locking devices. The navigation unit can be used by inserting the MAP disc.

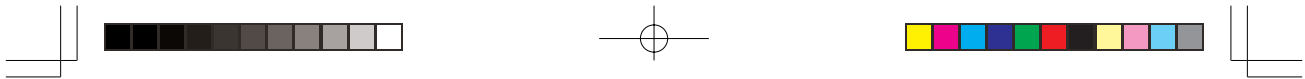
For further detailed information, refer to the navigation operating manual.

CAUTION

Insert only the MAP DVD to operate the navigation system.

Inserting other types of discs such as music CD, MP3 CD, or other DVD may cause defects to the navigation unit.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



0	<p>⚠ CAUTIONS WHEN USING AUDIO/VIDEO SYSTEM</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• An illegal copy of a CD/DVD may cause a malfunction in the audio/video head unit and abnormal replay. Use only original CD/DVDs.• Incompatible discs may cause a malfunction in the system. Use only compatible discs.• The back of the front monitor is very hot. Do not touch the back when opening the monitor.• Do not use the audio/video/navigation system for a long time when the engine is not running. The battery could discharge.• Be careful not to spill water on the unit or to let any foreign objects into the system through the opened monitor.• Do not apply excessive force to adjust, open, and close the monitor. Do not impede the automatic movement of the unit. It may cause a malfunction.• Do not apply any impacts and pressure to the monitor screen. The LCD panel or touch screen panel can be damaged.• When cleaning the touch screen, turn off the system and clean the surface with a dry and soft cloth. Never use a coarse cloth, hard cloth, chemical agent, or volatile cleaning solvent (alcohol, benzene, thinner) for cleaning the touch screen. The screen surface can be damaged and discolored. <p>Usable Discs</p> <p>Navigation Unit*</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Navigation map DVD <p>Head Unit</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DVD player*: DVD/VCD/Audio CD/MP3 CD• CD player: Audio CD <p>Changer</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• DVD/VCD/Audio CD/ MP3 CD <p>Please refer to a separately provided operating manual to check disk compatibility.</p>
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	

In Case of Emergency

12

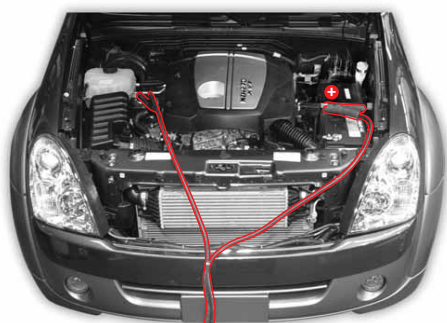
TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Starting the Engine with Jumper Cables .	12-2	● Shift Lever Lock Release and Safety Mode Reset	12-17
● Cautions When a Tire Is Flat	12-4	● Towing a Disabled Vehicle	12-18
● Warning Triangle*	12-5	● Emergency Towing	12-19
● OVM Tools	12-6	● Trailer Towing	12-20
● Removing the Spare Tire	12-7	● Accident or Fire	12-25
● Changing a Spare Tire	12-8		
● Cautions When Changing the Tire	12-13		
● When the Engine Is Overheating	12-14		
● Water Separator Warning Light and Engine Check Warning Light	12-16		

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

STARTING THE ENGINE WITH JUMPER CABLES

If the battery is weak or dead, the battery from another vehicle can be used with jumper cables to start the engine.



Booster battery

Discharged battery

The positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal.
The minus (-) cable to the minus (-) terminal.

12

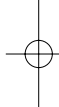
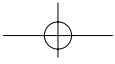
Connecting Order:

- (1) The + terminal of the discharged battery
 - (2) The + terminal of the booster battery
 - (3) The - terminal of the booster battery
 - (4) Connect one end of the other jumper cable to the body of the discharged vehicle, such as the engine block or a front towing hook.
1. Prepare a set of jumper cables.
 2. Place another vehicle that has the same 12 V of power near to the discharged vehicle.
 3. Switch off all electrical accessories for the discharged vehicle.
 4. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission to the P position (automatic transmission) or neutral (N) position (manual transmission).
 5. Connect the jumper cables.

12-2

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

REXTON II



⚠ WARNING

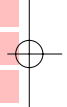
- Connecting the jumper cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery could result in arcing and possibly a battery explosion. Serious personal injury or vehicle damage can result.
- Make sure that the jumper leads are securely connected. Otherwise, an abrupt disconnection due to vibration during engine starting may cause an electrical short resulting in severe damage to electric components.
- A battery generates the gas which is flammable and explosive. This gas could be exploded due to the spark when connecting the jump cables. Make sure that the booster battery has the same voltage rate with the discharged battery.
- While connecting the jumper cables, make sure that the negative (-) and positive (+) cables never touch each other. Otherwise sparks might cause an explosion of the battery.
- Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin, or painted surfaces. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and contact your doctor.
- While being transported in an ambulance, gently wipe out the contacted area with a water-wet cloth or sponge.

⚠ CAUTION

- When starting your vehicle with jumper cable, turn off the engine of the boost vehicle and connect the jumper cables
- Ensure that the jumper cables are clear away fan blades before starting the engine.

6. Start the engine in the vehicle which has the booster battery, and let the engine idle for a few minutes.
7. Attempt to start the engine with the discharged battery.
8. After starting the engine, carefully disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse sequence of connection.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



CAUTIONS WHEN A TIRE IS FLAT



If one of the tires becomes flat while driving, grab the steering wheel firmly and remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Gradually slow down and park your vehicle in a safe place. Replace the flat tire with a spare tire. For the process, refer to sections about the spare tire.

WARNING

- Don't panic! Improper operation of the steering wheel or abrupt braking may cause a consequential accident on the road. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and turn on the hazard flasher and then apply the parking brake.
- Do not drive with a flat tire for even a very short distance. In addition to damages to the rim of the tire, abnormal driving conditions can cause a very danger situation.

WARNING

- Stop the engine and set up the warning triangle behind your vehicle (daytime: 100 m, night time: 200 m - on express way).
- Check the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed.
- Have all passengers get out of vehicle and move in a safe place.

WARNING TRIANGLE*



When you pull over your breaking down vehicle to a safe place, set up a warning triangle behind your vehicle.
(Daytime: 100 meters behind, Night: 200 meters behind)

When the vehicle has a serious problem during driving

1. Turn on the hazard flasher and move the vehicle out of traffic to a safe place. Set up the warning triangle behind your vehicle (days: 100 m, nights: 200 m) to warn other vehicles.
2. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle and stay away from the traffic. When your safety is secured, contact your Ssangyong dealer for your emergency service.

CAUTION

- Set up a warning triangle on a place where it can be very visible while paying attention to traffic conditions.
- On a highway or vehicle-designated road, evacuate yourself to a safe place after pulling over your vehicle.
- At night time, set up a blinking emergency triangle behind your vehicle (over 200 meters) to warn others.
- On a curved road, provide a emergency hand signal with a warning light to others at the point over 200 meters behind your vehicle.
- If your vehicle is operational or the problem is fixed, resume driving paying extra attention to traffic conditions.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-5

OVM TOOLS

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



OVM tools box

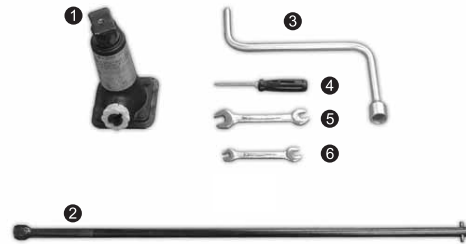


Jack storage



You can find a jack, jack extension, wheel nut wrench, and other OVM tools (screwdriver and spanner) under the second row seat behind driver's seat.

The vehicle jack is located behind the left trim beside the third row seat.



- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Jack | 4. Screwdriver (+ and -) |
| 2. Jack connection | 5. Spanner (Big) |
| 3. Wheel nut wrench | 6. Spanner (Small) |

CAUTION

- Put out the OVM tools after fixing the upright seat with a strap. Do not put out the tools without fixing the seat using a strap. In that case, the second row seat may fall and cause injury.
- After using the OVM tools, return them to the original locations.

REMOVING THE SPARE TIRE



1. Insert the connection rod in the hole located in the upper center of the bumper after opening the tailgate, and then connect the wheel nut wrench to it.
2. Turn the wheel nut wrench counter-clockwise to lower the spare tire.
3. When the spare tire is on the ground, remove the tire by prying off the lift plate.

WARNING

The emergency spare tire is only for emergency situations. Never use it for normal driving. After installing the spare tire on a wheel, take your vehicle to a Ssangyong authorized service center or a tire-specialized shop to replace it with a new regular tire.

CAUTION

- When reinstalling the spare tire to the carrier, be sure to securely lock it to the carrier holder.
- While your vehicle is being raised up with the jack, avoid any impact on your vehicle. Otherwise, you may get injured.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-7

CHANGING A SPARE TIRE

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



1. Install the chocks under the front side and rear side of the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being replaced.

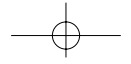
WARNING

- The parking brake should always be applied when replacing the flat tire.

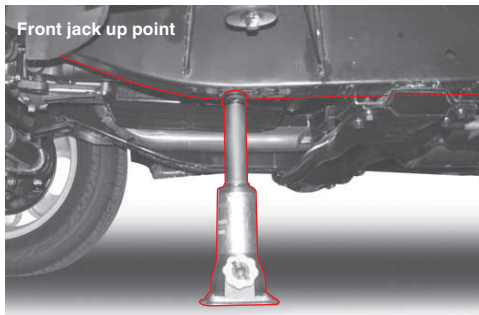
2. Loosen the wheel nuts two or three turns by turning them counterclockwise with the wheel nut wrench.

WARNING

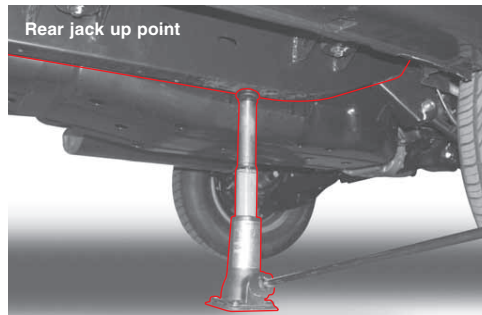
- Do not remove the nuts yet from the wheel. If they are removed, the wheel could slip off from the vehicle. Then, the body of the vehicle will fall down on you and you may get seriously injured.
- Loosen the wheel nuts two or three turns.



When Replacing a Front Tire



When Replacing a Rear Tire



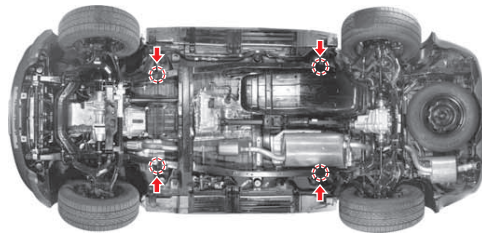
3. Place the jack directly under the jack-up points so that the top of the jack contacts the vehicle at the jack-up point.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle until the jack is set up at the jack up point. Do not use the jack on a tilted or soft surface. Make sure that the jack securely contacts the jacking point of the vehicle and the ground. Otherwise, there could be a personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not set the jack at any other position on the vehicle other than those specified. If the jack is set at the wrong position, the body of the vehicle could be dented or damaged. The top of the jack should contact the jacking point.



<Jack up points>

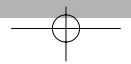
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

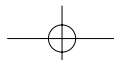


REXTON II

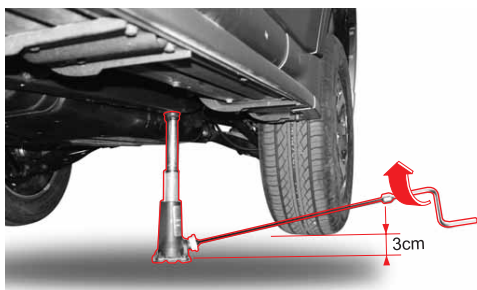
IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-9





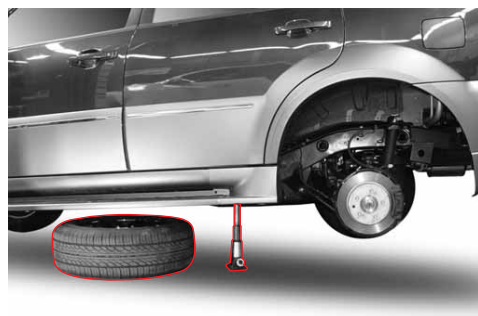
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



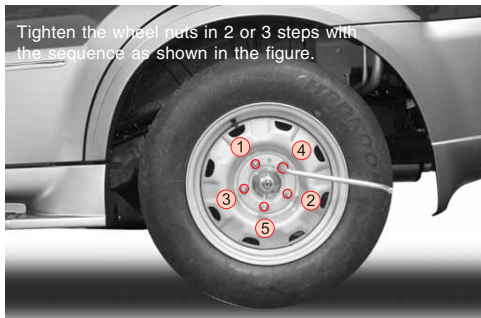
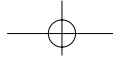
4. Combine the jack, jack extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown in the figure. Raise up the vehicle by rotating the combined wrench clockwise until the tire is off from the ground about 3 cm.
5. Remove the wheel nuts by hands while the vehicle is stationary. Remove all of the wheel nuts.

WARNING

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle until the jack is in the proper position, and secure both to the vehicle and the ground. It may cause a personal injury or vehicle damage.



6. Take the wheel off and place the wheel under the vehicle body. This helps to minimize any danger if the jack slip off position.



7. Then mount the spare tire and temporarily tighten the wheel nuts until the spare tire wheel is no longer loose.

WARNING

By tightening up the spare tire until it is not loose any more, you can avoid any tilting of the tire on the wheel hub when the tire touches the ground.

8. Lower the vehicle by rotating the combined wrench counter-clockwise until the tire touches the ground. Remove the jack.

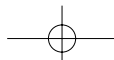
WARNING

While the jack is supporting your vehicle, do not use too much force to tighten the nuts. Otherwise, the vehicle may slip off and you may get injured.

9. Tighten the wheel nuts in 2 or 3 steps with the sequence as shown in the figure.

10. When done with mounting the spare tire, place the flat tire in the luggage room. Store the jack and other emergency tools in their storages.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



If over tightened, the wheel nuts could be damaged. Do not overtighten the wheel nuts by pressing the wheel nut wrench by foot or using an assist pipe.

⚠ WARNING

- With the emergency spare tire, do not drive any faster than 60 km/h.
- The temporary spare tire is only for emergency situations. Never use it for normal driving. After installing the spare tire on a wheel, take your vehicle to a Ssangyong authorized service center or a tire-specialized shop to replace it with a new regular tire.
- Improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off or any malfunctioning in the steering and braking system.
- This could lead to an accident. Be sure to tighten the wheel nuts as specified. If the wheel comes off due to a loose wheel nut, you may have a fatal accident.
- Using different tires could cause you to lose control while driving. Be sure to use the same size and type tires from the same manufacturer on all wheels.

⚠ CAUTION

- After changing the tire and driving the vehicle about 1000 km, retighten the wheel nuts.
- Wheel nut tightening torque: 120 - 140 Nm

CAUTIONS WHEN CHANGING THE TIRE

CAUTIONS WHEN CHANGING THE TIRE

► Before Changing the Tire

- Turn on hazard flashers and move off the road to a safe place away from traffic. Park on a firm and level ground.
- Set up the jack at the specified position. Never get under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack. While the vehicle is on the jack, never start or run the engine or push the vehicle.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle and stay in a place away from traffic.

► During Changing the Tire

- Do not completely tighten the wheel nuts at a time. Tighten the wheel nuts in the diagonal sequence in 2 or 3 steps.
- Never apply oil or grease to either wheel studs or nuts as it will cause them to overtighten.

► After Changing the Tire

- Check, repair, and retighten the replaced tire at the nearest Ssangyong Authorized Service Center or a qualified tire shop after an emergency change.
- Securely fix the tire in its carrier. Check to see if the spare tire is securely locked into the carrier without any looseness. Otherwise, it may make some abnormal noises or fall out from the carrier on the road while the vehicle is moving. This may cause an accident or hit a pedestrian.
- If this happens, the fallen tire can be a great danger to other vehicles or people. Check the tightness of the wheel nuts and tire pressure before driving.
- The spare tire is designed as an emergency spare only. Do not exceed 60 km/h speed when the spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

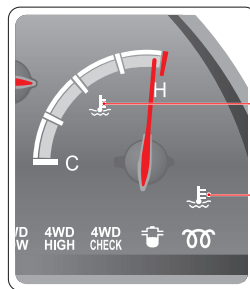
REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-13

WHEN THE ENGINE IS OVERHEATING

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



Coolant temperature gauge

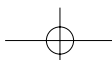
Engine overheat warning lamp



When the engine overheats, steam or spray may come out the engine compartment. Or, the coolant temperature gauge is closed to "H". If this happens, the engine overheat warning lamp comes on and a buzzer will sound. Immediately stop your vehicle in a safe place.

Symptoms:

- The engine overheat warning lamp blinks (Buzzer sounds)
- The gauge indicates over the normal range (or in the red zone),
- Steam or spray from the engine compartment.
- Reduced engine output.



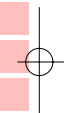
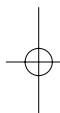
WHEN THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

1. Move off the road to a safe place away from traffic. Park on a firm and level ground. Apply the parking brake and shift the transmission to the **P** position (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission).
2. Turn off the air conditioner or heater if used. Open the engine hood to ventilate the engine compartment.
3. If you see steam under the hood, stop the engine immediately.
If there is no steam, open the hood and leave the engine running in idling speed.
4. However, if the gauge doesn't go down to the normal range even in idling, stop the engine and cool it down.
5. Check the coolant level in the reserve tank. If it is too low, check for leaks in the radiator hoses and connections.
6. Add coolant into the reserve tank if necessary.
7. If necessary, cover the tank cap with a cloth and turn the cap a little to release any pressure. After fully releasing the pressure, remove the cap and fill up the tank. Then, put the cap back on the tank.
8. If the coolant level is normal, have the cooling system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

CAUTION

- When the engine overheats because of the low coolant level, immediately turn off the engine and let it cool down.
- Opening the reserve tank cap should be performed when the engine is off and has cooled down.
- Scalding hot coolant and steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury. Never remove the coolant reserve tank cap when the engine and the radiator are hot.
- The engine may be damaged if you add cold water abruptly when the engine is still hot.
- Use only Ssangyong recommended (antifreeze) coolants.
- If the problem continues, have the cooling system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



WATER SEPARATOR WARNING LIGHT AND ENGINE CHECK WARNING LIGHT

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

Engine Check Warning Light



If the light stays on or comes on while driving, some of the engine control components including sensors and other devices are defective. Have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

WARNING

- The fuel system in the engine may get serious damages if you keep driving while the warning light is on. Prompt correction should be necessary.
- Before starting the engine, perform the pumping operation of the priming pump until it becomes rigid to fill up the fuel pump with fuel.

CAUTION

When the water level inside the water separator in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds. Also, the driving force of the vehicle decreases. If these conditions occur, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter & the water separator. If the above conditions are still existing after draining the water, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.



Water Separator Warning Light



When the water level inside the water separator in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, this warning light comes on and a buzzer sounds. If these conditions occur, immediately drain the water from the fuel filter & the water separator. For the draining procedures, please refer to "How to drain the water from fuel filter" section in this manual.

CAUTION

When this warning light comes on, the engine driving force may be decreased or the engine may stall.

SHIFT LEVER LOCK RELEASE AND SAFETY MODE RESET

HOW TO RELEASE THE SHIFT LEVER LOCK



1. Apply the parking brake firmly and turn the ignition off.
2. Depress the brake pedal and push down the shift lock release lever with a stick such as a pen. Then, shift the lever to other position.
3. Start the engine, release the parking brake, and place the selector lever to the “D” position.

⚠ WARNING

- If the automatic gear selector does not move out of “P”, take the steps mentioned above and take the vehicle to a Ssangyong dealer or authorized service center. Have the vehicle checked and repaired.
- The brake pedal must be depressed when you try to move the selector.

Symptoms after Resetting of the Safety Mode

- Heavy shock when moving the selector lever
- Decreased driving force while driving at a high speed
- Fixed gear position during driving
- If the safety mode is activated, the shift indicator displays “D”.

If one of these symptoms happens, reset the automatic transmission safe mode.

How to Reset the Safety Mode

1. Park the vehicle and place the selector lever to the “P” position.
2. Stop the engine and wait for over 10 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

⚠ WARNING

If abnormal operation of the transmission (fixed at the 2nd forward gear in the “D” position or the 2nd reverse gear in the “R” position) still exists, have the system check by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

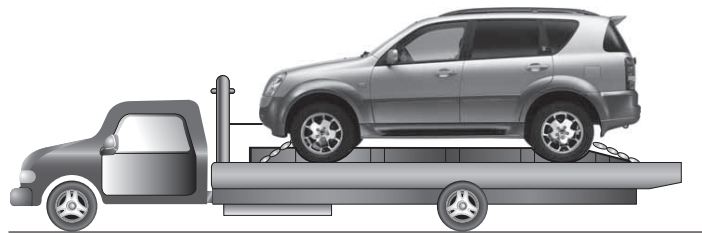
16

REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-17

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE



Flat-bed equipment is the best method of moving a disabled vehicle to avoid any damages.

The vehicle equipped with the full-time four wheel drive (TOD) system should be towed by this way.

⚠ WARNING

- If you tow the vehicle equipped with the full-time four wheel drive (TOD) system while front or rear tires are rolling on the road, the drive system in the vehicle should be severely damaged.

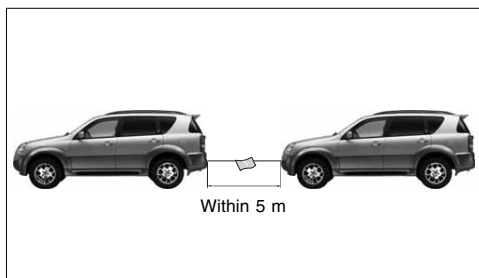
If not available to use a car carrier, tow the vehicle as illustrated.

Choose an appropriate towing method based upon vehicle damage.

⚠ WARNING

- The propeller shaft for the grounded wheels should be disconnected before towing.
- Because their oil pumps are off during towing, towing the vehicle with the propeller shaft connected can cause internal damage or burning of the transmission or the transfer casing.

EMERGENCY TOWING



- When towing your vehicle with the towing rope:
 1. Securely tie up the towing rope to the towing hooks. Secure the rope to both of the towing hooks under the front of the vehicle as tight as possible.
 2. To make the rope conspicuously visible, bind a white colored cloth on the center of the rope.
 3. Place the gearshift lever in the neutral position and release the parking brake.
 4. Switch on the hazard warning flashers of both vehicles.
 5. Maintain the towing distance. Apply more force to depress the brake pedal of the vehicle that will be towed.
 6. Set the ignition in the ON position.
 7. Total length of the towing and towed vehicle and the towing rope should be less than 25 meters. And tow the vehicle within 25 km with 5 km/h of the towing speed. The length of the rope should be less than 5 m.

LOCATION OF TOWING HOOKS

Front towing hook



Rear towing hook



CAUTION

- If you cannot use a professional towing service, the driver of the towed vehicle should stay behind the steering wheel. But, never use this emergency towing when the electrical system, steering system, or brake system is not operative.
- Ensure that only horizontal tension is applied to the front or rear towing hook.
- If there are steep hills or sharp turns in your towing path, do not use this method.
- Depress the brake pedal stronger than normal condition when the engine is not running.
- When your electrical systems operate properly, turn on the hazard warning lamps or turn signal lamps according to the towing vehicle's signals.
- Avoid overloaded towing and do not tow a heavier vehicle than yours.
- Position the ignition switch to "ACC" or "ON" so that the steering wheel is not locked.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

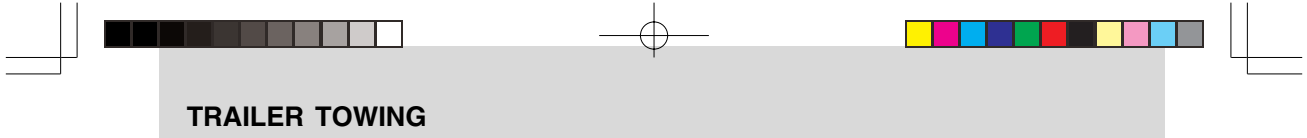
15

16

REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

12-19



TRAILER TOWING

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger vehicle therefore handling, braking, durability and economy will be affected by towing a trailer.

Your safety and satisfaction depend upon proper use of correct equipment. Also, you should avoid overloading and other abusive use.

The maximum loaded trailer weight you can pull with your vehicle depends on your intended use and what special equipment has been installed on it. Before attempting any towing, ensure that the correct equipment is fitted to your vehicle.

Your Ssangyong Dealer will help supply and install towing equipment to suit your requirement.

TRAILER LOADING

To load your trailer properly, you must know how to measure gross trailer weight and trailer ball weight. Gross trailer weight is the weight of the trailer plus all cargo in it.

You can measure gross trailer weight by putting the fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale.

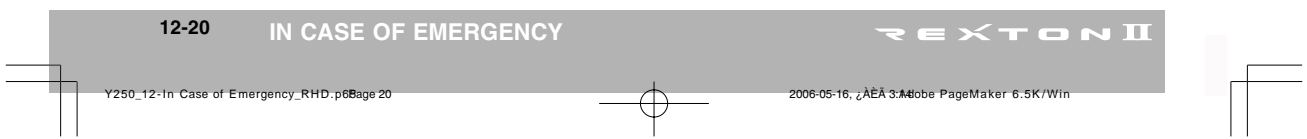
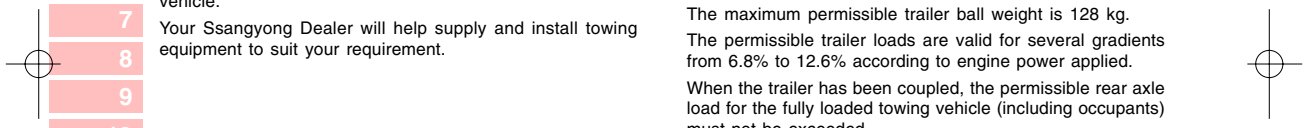
Trailer ball weight is the downward force exerted on the hitch by the trailer coupler at its normal towing height. This weight can be measured using a bathroom scale.

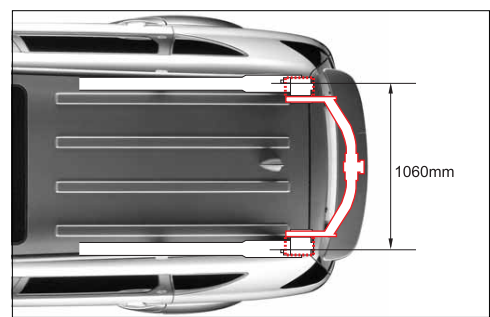
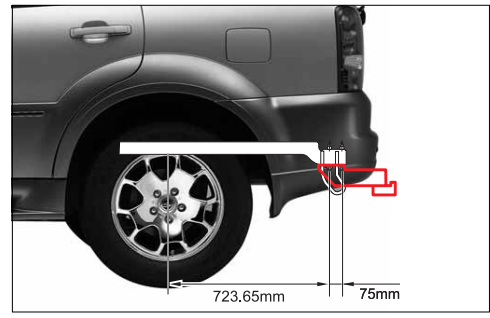
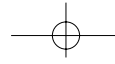
The weight of your loaded trailer (gross trailer weight) should never exceed the specified values.

The maximum permissible trailer ball weight is 128 kg.

The permissible trailer loads are valid for several gradients from 6.8% to 12.6% according to engine power applied.

When the trailer has been coupled, the permissible rear axle load for the fully loaded towing vehicle (including occupants) must not be exceeded.





Maximum Load Limits

(unit: kg)

Engine	Type	Maximum Trailer	Maximum permissible static vertical load on the coupling device
G32D	AT	with brake	3,200
		without brake	750
D27DTP	AT	with brake	3,200
		without brake	750
D27DT	MT	with brake	3,200
		without brake	750
	AT	with brake	3,200

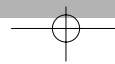
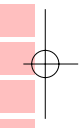
128

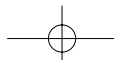
The above dimensions are certified data to meet the following conditions.

On a 12% of uphill: Capable of 5 starts within 5 minutes (with trailer)

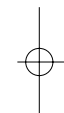
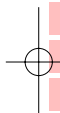
On a 18% of uphill: Capable of 5 starts within 5 minutes (without trailer)

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16





0	⚠ WARNING In higher elevations the engine output and gradability may drop so that it may not be possible for the permissible trailer loads to be fully utilized in mountainous territory.
1	
2	So, the permissible trailer loads should be reduced by 10% at every 1,000 m after reached at 1,000 m of altitude.
3	
4	⚠ WARNING Never exceed the maximum load limits of trailer or trailer towing equipment and be aware that due to the higher load overheating might occur in hot days or during continuous uphill driving.
5	
6	
7	⚠ WARNING Incorrect loading and crosswinds, large trucks passing or road roughness can cause swaying or trailer separation.
8	• Adjust ball load by distribution of load in trailer.
9	• Check by weighing loaded trailer and ball load separately.
10	• Check the relevant state or territory registration authorities for the legal maximum towing weight capacities.
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	



TRAILER BRAKES

If the trailer brakes are used, you should follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer. Never modify the brake system of your vehicle.

TRAILER LIGHTS

Make sure your trailer is equipped with lights which meet country and local requirements.

Always check for the proper operation of all trailer lights before you start to tow.

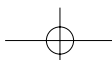
TIRES

When towing trailers, be sure your tires are properly inflated to the inflation pressure.

SAFETY CHAINS

Always attach safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer so that the tongue will not drop to the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack to permit full turning. Never allow safety chains to drag on the road.





BRAKE FLUID

Change the brake fluid every 15,000 km (9,000 miles) under the following conditions.

- Towing a trailer frequently.
- Driving in hilly or mountainous terrain.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID

More frequent maintenance is required if your vehicle tows trailer frequently.

TOWING TIPS

When towing a trailer, your vehicle will handle differently compared with normal driving condition.

For safety, observe the following precautions:

- Practice turning, stopping, and reversing before you begin towing in traffic.
Do not tow in traffic until you are confident that you can handle the vehicle and trailer safely.
- Before driving, make sure that the lighting system of the trailer works properly.
- Do not drive faster than 90 km/h.
- Make sure that you have enough room when cornering and avoid sudden maneuvers.
- Avoid abrupt starts, acceleration or stops.
- Avoid sharp turns or lane changes.
- Always have someone guide you when reversing.

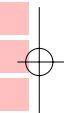
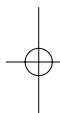
- Allow adequate stopping distance.
Stopping distance is increased when you tow a trailer.
- Avoid holding the brake pedal down too long or too frequently, which will cause the brakes to overheat and result in reduced brake efficiency.
- Always block the wheels on both vehicle and trailer when parking. Apply the parking brake firmly.
- Parking on a steep slope is not recommended.
You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill.
If something goes wrong, such as the trailer/caravan hitch becoming disengaged, people can be injured and both the vehicle and trailer can be damaged.
- If someone removing the blocks stands directly behind the trailer, he could be injured. If your brakes or the hitch slipped, the trailer could roll backward. Make sure anyone removing blocks from your wheels stands to one side.
- Take note of trailer manufacturer's instructions.

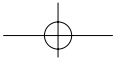
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

DRIVING ON HILL

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to a level which minimizes the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

PARKING ON HILLS

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) for automatic transmission yet, or into a gear for a manual transmission.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake, and then shift to PARK (P) for automatic transmission, or First or Reverse gear for a manual transmission.
5. Release the regular brakes.

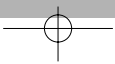
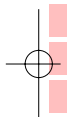
WHEN YOU ARE READY TO LEAVE AFTER PARKING ON A HILL

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
 - Start your engine
 - Shift into a gear and
 - Release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

MAINTENANCE WHEN TOWING TRAILER

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're towing a trailer. See the maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are engine oil, brake pads & discs, automatic transmission fluid. Each of these is covered in this manual and the index will help you find them quickly. If you want to tow a trailer, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.



ACCIDENT OR FIRE



If your vehicle catches on fire, don't panic. Evacuate any occupants and use the extinguisher.

ACCIDENT

Turn on the emergency hazard warning switch. If possible, move your vehicle to a safe place to avoid any secondary accidents. If anyone is injured, call an ambulance and contact the nearest police station.

FIRE

Stop immediately in a safe place. Turn off the engine. Use fire extinguishers to put out the fire. If it is impossible to extinguish the fire, contact the nearest fire or police station.

WARNING

- In an accident, fuel can be released from the vehicle. Therefore, stop the engine and avoid any sparks or flames.
- If you have even a minor burn, see your doctor.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

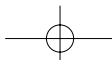
15

16

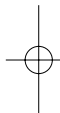
REXTON II

IN CASE OF EMERGENCY

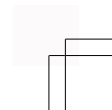
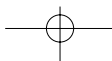
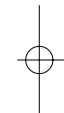
12-25



MEMO



Lined area for writing a memo, consisting of 18 horizontal lines.



Service and Maintenance

13

TABLE OF CONTENTS

● Daily Check List	13-2	● Parking Brake/Catalytic Converter	13-20
● Locations in Engine Compartment	13-3	● Brake and Clutch Fluid (With M/T)	13-21
● Engine Oil	13-6	● Transference Oil	13-22
● Engine Coolant	13-9	● Washer Fluid	13-23
● Air Cleaner	13-11	● Battery	13-24
● Power Steering Fluid	13-13	● Spark Plugs	13-26
● Fuel Filter and Priming Pump (Without Additional Water Separator)	13-14	● Fuse and Relay Box	13-27
● Fuel Filter and Water Separator* (With Additional Water Separator)	13-15	● Tire	13-32
● Fuel Filter/Drive Belt	13-18	● Wiper Blade Replacement	13-36
● Brake & Clutch Pedal	13-19	● Do-It-Yourself Operation	13-37
		● Scheduled Maintenance Services	13-38

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

DAILY CHECK LIST

0 Exterior



The following checks are recommended before driving to maintain safe and dependable vehicle operation.

1. Check the tires for inflation pressure and damage.
2. Check the wheel bolts for looseness.
3. Check the operation of the lights.
4. Check for any oil, water, fuel and fluid leaks.

Interior



1. Check for the steering wheel's free play and looseness.
2. Check the parking brake lever.
3. Check the operation of the horn, windshield wipers and turn signals.
4. Check the operation of the instrument cluster and indicator warning lights.
5. Check the level of fuel in the fuel tank.
6. Check the position of the rearview mirrors.
7. Check the operation of the door and window locking mechanism.
8. Check the brake's and clutch pedal's free play, height and function.
9. Check the seat belts.

CAUTION

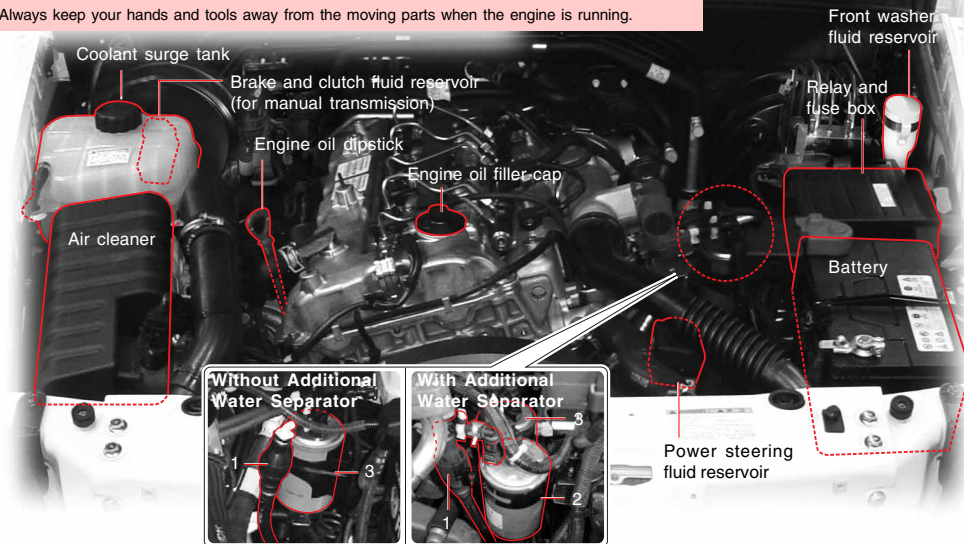
If in doubt about driving and operating conditions, have your vehicle checked at a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

LOCATIONS IN ENGINE COMPARTMENT

D27DT DIESEL ENGINE

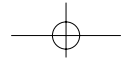
⚠ CAUTION

Do not work on the engine compartment while the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, muffler or catalytic converter is hot. Always turn the engine off and allow it to cool before starting the maintenance. Always keep your hands and tools away from the moving parts when the engine is running.



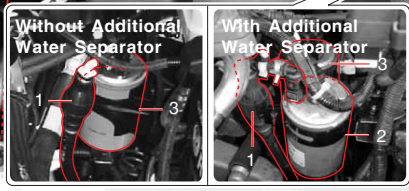
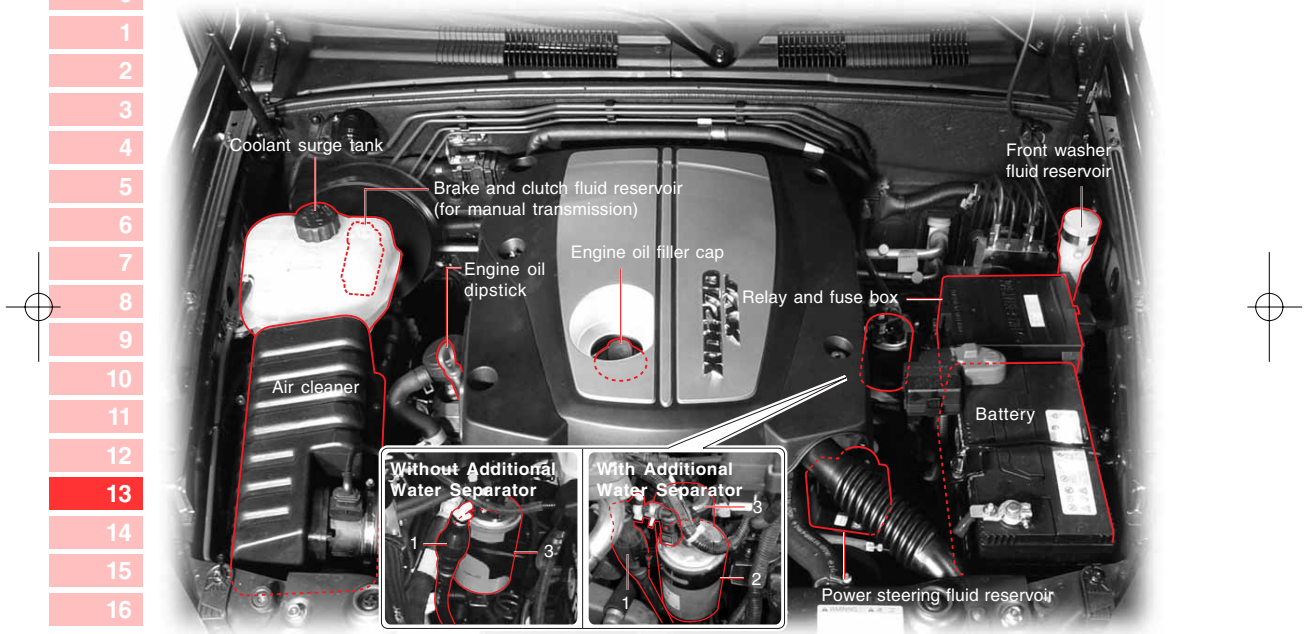
1. Priming pump 2. Water separator 3. Fuel filter

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

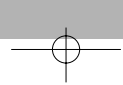


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

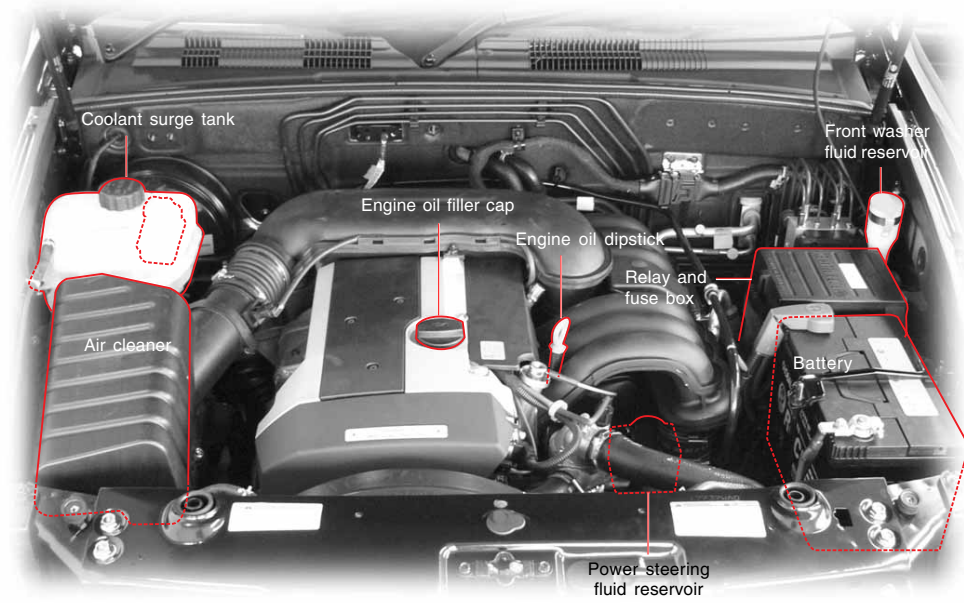
D27DTP DIESEL ENGINE



1. Priming pump 2. Water separator 3. Fuel filter



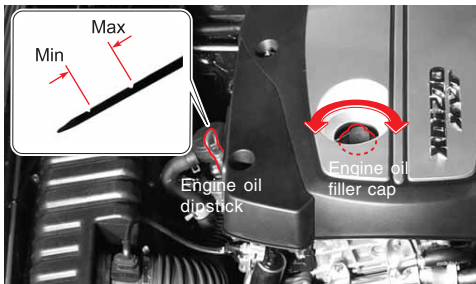
G32D GASOLINE ENGINE



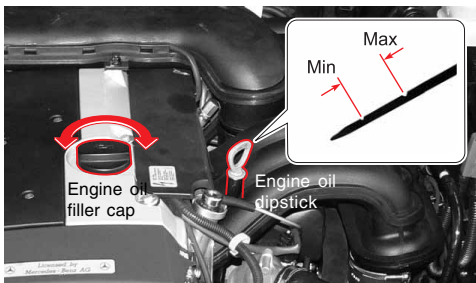
- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

ENGINE OIL

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



Level Check

Park the vehicle on a level ground and apply the parking brake. Stop the engine and wait more than 5 minutes.

1. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth. Reinsert it all the way.
2. Pull out it again and check the oil level.
3. The oil level should be between the maximum (Max) mark and minimum (Min) mark on the oil dipstick. Oil should be replenished before the level goes below the minimum mark.

Replenishment

1. If the level gets to the lower point, open the filler cap on top of the cylinder block and add the genuine oil without exceeding the level of the upper mark.
2. Recheck the oil level after 5 minutes.

SPECIFICATION AND CAPACITY

Specification	Quality class: Ssangyong genuine engine oil (Approved by MB Sheet 229.1 or 229.3) Viscosity: MB sheet No. 224.1	
Capacity	D27DT	8.5L
	D27DTP	8.5L
	G32D	9.0L

⚠ WARNING

Use only Ssangyong genuine engine oil and filters. Use of non-recommended products could cause damage to the engine.

FUNCTION OF ENGINE OIL

Engine oil's major function is to lubricate and cool the parts inside of the engine, which enables engine to work properly.

Consumption of Engine Oil

The consumption of engine oil is depending on the viscosity and quality of the oil, and the driving habit. More oil may be required under the following conditions;

- When the Vehicle is New

A new engine usually consumes more oil because its pistons, piston ring and cylinder walls are not yet adjusted with an optimal condition.

Oil Consumption : Max. 0.8 Liter per 1,000 km

Accordingly, it is necessary for the driver to check frequently the oil level and to replenish oil if needed. SYMC recommends that the oil level be checked every time you refuel the vehicle or you drive the long distance until the first 5,000 km.

- When driving at High Engine Speeds

As long as you keep the followings with sufficient care in your first running the vehicle, it will guarantee you to get excellent and comfortable performance for a long with your vehicle.

- Remember to check the engine oil level and shorten the cycle to refuel the engine oil under severe driving conditions.
- Avoid subjecting to engine to heavy loads by driving at full throttle, especially be careful when the outside temperature remains below freezing for the first 1,000 km.
- Do not use the trailing in the first 1,000 km driving

* What's Severe Driving Condition?

- Driving at the high engine speed or at high-speed
- Driving for consecutive two hours at high speed
- Driving the rough road, off-road, dirt-laden road, and muddy roads

- Driving in areas where salt or other corrosive materials are being used
- Repeated driving in short-distance
- Driving with the excessive idling
- High load driving such as trailing

CHANGE INTERVAL

- The engine oil filter element should be changed at the same time with the engine oil.
- Use only the Ssangyong genuine engine oil and filter.

Engine oil

Diesel Engine

	Service interval
EU	Initial check: 5,000 km, and replenish if necessary, change every 15,000 km or 12 months (But, shorten the service interval under severe condition)
GENERAL	Initial change: 5,000 km, change every 10,000 km or 12 months (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)

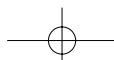
Gasoline Engine

Service interval
Initial change: 10,000 km, change every 15,000 km or 12 months (But, shorten the service interval under severe condition)

Engine oil filter

Item	Service interval
Engine oil filter	Same interval with the engine oil

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

⚠ WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS WHEN CHECKING

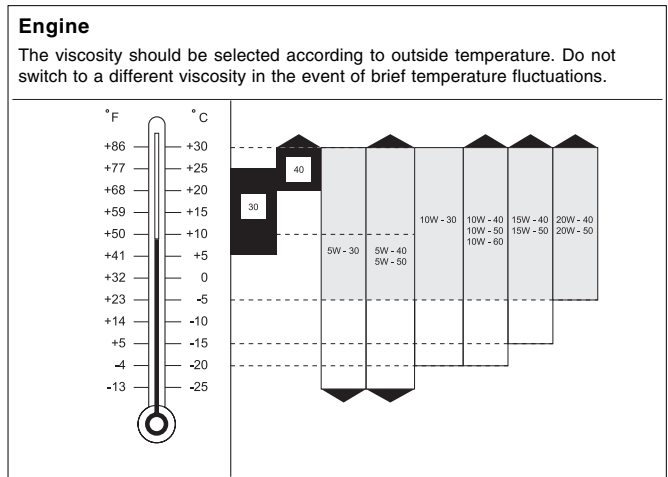
- ⚠ WARNING**
- Clean the dipstick with a clean cloth so that any foreign materials cannot get into the engine.
 - Use only the Ssangyong genuine engine oil.
 - The oil should not go above the upper mark on the dipstick.
 - Operating with insufficient or too much amount of oil can damage the engine.

- ⚠ CAUTION**
- Regularly check the engine oil level and add the Ssangyong genuine engine oil if necessary.

SAE VISCOSITY CLASSES

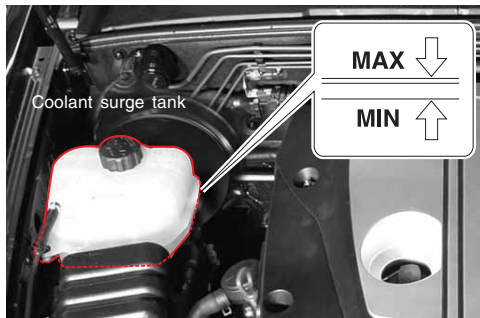
The SAE classes (viscosity) should be selected in accordance with the average seasonal air temperature.

Applying the SAE classes exactly on the basis of the outside air temperatures would necessitate frequently changing the engine oil. The temperature limits for the SAE classes should therefore be regarded as reference temperatures and the actual air temperature may be higher or lower for a short period of time.



ENGINE COOLANT

Diesel Engine

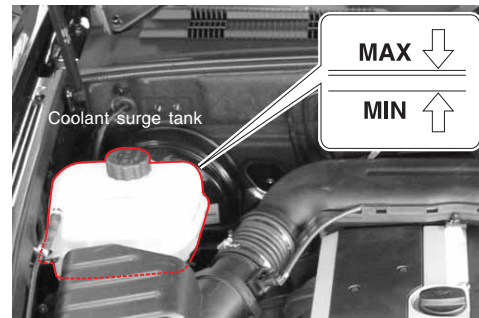


Level Check

Park the vehicle on level ground and apply the parking brake. Stop the engine and wait until it cools.

1. The coolant level should be between the MAX and MIN mark on the coolant surge tank.
2. Check the coolant level. If the level is below the "MIN" mark, immediately add coolant.

Gasoline Engine



Service Interval

- Replacement: Every 3 years or every 60,000 km

Diesel Engine (D27DT)	≈ 11.5 ℓ	Ssangyong genuine coolant
Diesel Engine (D27DTP)	≈ 11.5 ℓ	HOECHST GENANTIN SUPER
Gasoline Engine (G32D)	11.3 - 11.5 ℓ	8023/14

- Check: Everyday, before driving off
- Replenishment: Replenish as necessary

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

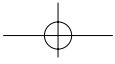
12

13

14

15

16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Replenishment

Use only the 50/50 mixture of soft water and antifreeze as specified.

1. Open the coolant surge tank cap slowly when the engine is cold. At this time, you can hear a "hissing" sound.
2. When there is no more "hissing" sound, remove the cap from the surge tank.
3. Add the 50:50 mixture of water and antifreeze to the coolant reservoir tank.
4. If no unusual things happen, tighten the coolant reservoir cap.

CAUTION

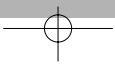
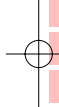
- Avoid any direct contact of the coolant to the painted body of the vehicle.

WARNING

When the coolant level is too low, the engine can overheat. If the coolant temperature gauge in the instrument cluster goes up abnormally, immediately check the coolant level. Use only the Ssangyong genuine coolant and anti-freeze. If different types of coolants or unapproved coolants are used to refill, chemical reactions can be caused and block the flow of the coolant. This may cause the engine to overheat or burning inside the engine.

WARNING

- Scalding hot coolant and steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury. Never remove the coolant surge tank cap when the engine and radiator are hot.
- Use only the Ssangyong genuine coolant and anti-freeze.

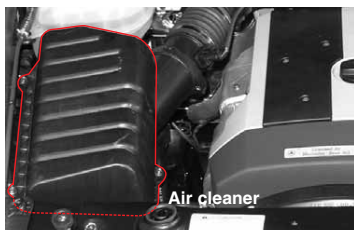


AIR CLEANER

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



Cleaning

Blow the compressed air through the element in the opposite direction to normal air flow to clean the element.

Diesel	EU: Initial clean: 5,000 km, clean every 15,000 km, replace every 30,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe condition)
	GENERAL: Initial clean: 5,000 km, clean every 10,000 km, replace every 30,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)
Gasoline	Clean every 15,000 km, replace every 60,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive your vehicle with an improperly installed air cleaner element or without it. It may damage the engine or may cause a fire.
- Do not let any object enter the housing when cleaning the air cleaner. It may damage the engine or may cause an engine to stall.

⚠ CAUTION

- If you blow the compressed air to normal air flow, the engine will be damaged due to foreign materials entering.
- Be careful with the direction of the compressed air on the air cleaner.

⚠ CAUTION

- If vehicle is operated under severe condition
- Pollutant area or off-road driving
 - Driving in dusty condition or sandy condition
- frequently inspect the air cleaner, if necessary, change the air cleaner.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

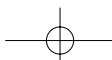
12

13

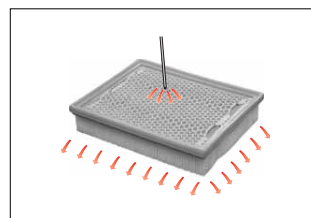
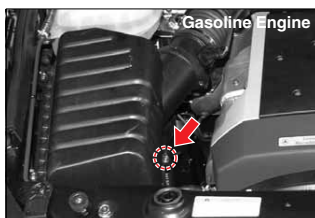
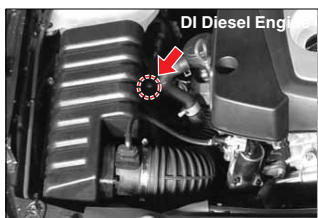
14

15

16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, replace more often than at the usual recommended intervals. If it is dirty, shake the element to remove dust. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing and cover with a damp cloth. Clean the air cleaner element by blowing compressed air through it in the opposite direction to normal air flow.

Blow the compressed air through the element in the opposite direction to normal air flow to clean the element as shown above.

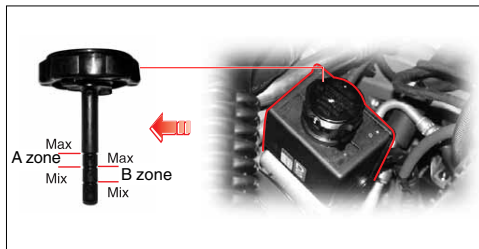
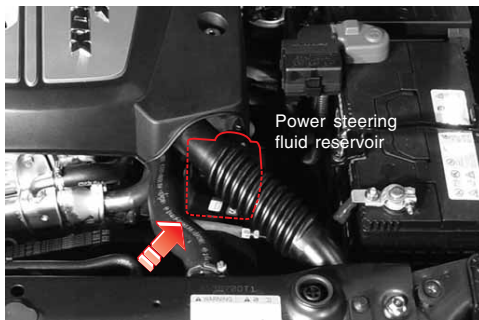
WARNING
Engine can be damaged.
Do not operate the vehicle without air cleaner element.

Change

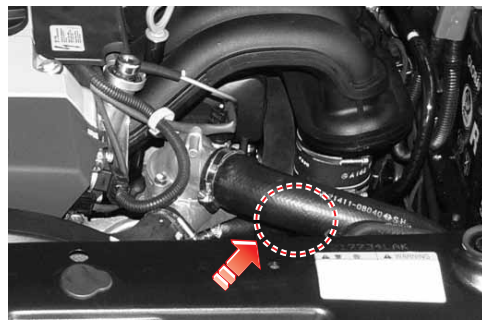
1. Unscrew the cover bolts and remove the cover.
2. Replace the air cleaner element with a new one. Make sure that the element is correctly installed in the air cleaner housing.
3. Close the cover and tighten the bolts.

POWER STEERING FLUID

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



Check the fluid level on a level ground with the engine turned off. The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir cap gauge. If it drops to or below the MIN mark, refill the reservoir with the specified fluid. Only use the specified fluid. The difference between the MIN and MAX marks shows fluctuations of the steering fluid between when it is hot and when it is cold.

Specification and Capacity

Specification	ATF DEXRON II or III
Capacity (L)	Approx. 1.0

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

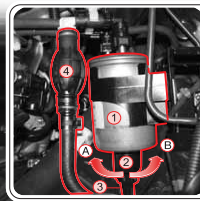
16

FUEL FILTER AND PRIMING PUMP (Without Additional Water Separator) D27DTP, D27DT DIESEL ENGINE

- 0 • Change the fuel filter at every 30,000 km (EU) or 25,000 km (General) of driving.
- 1 • Drain water from the fuel filter whenever replacing the engine oil.
- 2 • After changing the fuel filter, perform the pumping operation of the priming pump until it becomes rigid.

CAUTION

- 4 • Change the fuel filter according to the specified service interval.
- 5 • Drain water from the fuel filter whenever changing the engine oil.
- 6 • After changing the fuel filter or draining the water, perform the pumping operation of priming the pump until it becomes rigid.



- A Plug opening direction
- B Plug closing direction
- 1 Fuel filter
- 2 Water drain plug
- 3 Connector
- 4 Priming pump



Water Separating Function

If water in fuel gets into the engine and fuel system, it may cause serious damage to the fuel system. The fuel filter provides the water separating function to block the inflow of water. When the water level inside the water separator in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level, the warning light comes on and the buzzer sounds. If it occurs, immediately drain water from the fuel filter. For draining procedures, refer to "How to drain the water from fuel filter" section in this manual.

Priming Pump Operating Conditions

1. when completely consumed the fuel
2. after draining the water from the fuel filter
3. after replacing the fuel filter

Before starting the engine, perform the pumping operation of the priming pump until it becomes rigid to fill up the fuel pump with fuel.

FUEL FILTER AND WATER SEPARATOR* (With Additional Water Separator) DIESEL ENGINE

D27DTP, D27DT

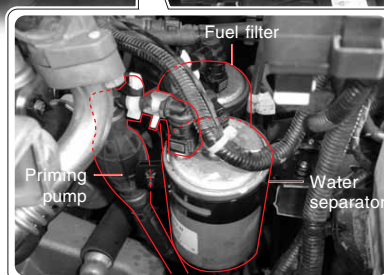


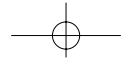
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

Priming Pump Operating Conditions

1. If the vehicle has been run out of fuel
2. After draining water from the fuel filter.
3. After replacing the fuel filter

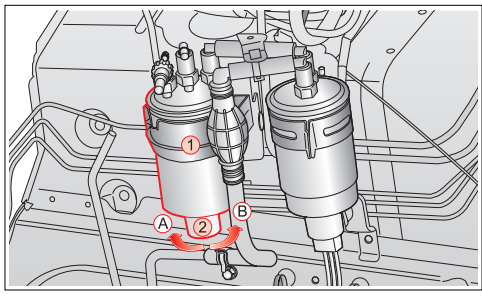
Before starting the engine, perform the pumping operation of the priming pump until it becomes rigid so that the fuel pump fills up with fuel.





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

FUEL FILTER



- 1. Fuel filter
- 2. Drain plug
- A. Opening direction of drain plug
- B. Closing direction of drain plug

If particles in fuel get into the engine and fuel-related devices, it may cause serious damage in affected components. Make sure to replace the fuel filter according to the specified maintenance schedule.

Make sure that the foreign materials get into the fuel filter while changing the fuel filter, and clean around it to prevent particles from flowing into the filter.

Press the priming pump until it becomes rigid.

• Service Interval

EU	Replace every 30,000 km (Draining water from fuel filter: whenever replacing the engine oil)
General	Replace every 25,000 km (Draining water from fuel filter: whenever replacing the engine oil)

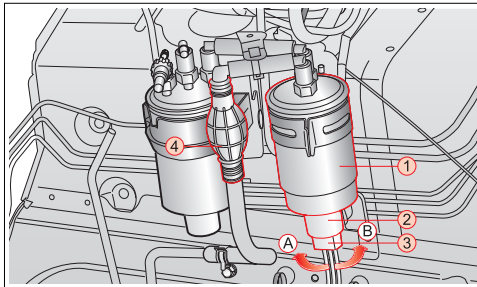
Water Separating Function

If the water in fuel gets into the engine and the fuel system, it may cause serious damage in the fuel system. The fuel filter offers the water separating function to block the inflow of water.

⚠ CAUTION

- Replace the fuel filter according to the specified maintenance schedule.
- Drain the water from the fuel filter whenever replacing the engine oil.
- After replacing the fuel filter or draining the water, press the priming pump until it becomes rigid.

WATER SEPARATOR



1. Water separator
 2. Drain plug
 3. Connector
 4. Priming pump
- A. Opening direction of drain plug
B. Closing direction of drain plug

The water separator is used in the fuel supplying system in order to reduce the water content in the fuel provided to the FIE system. It gives additional water volume storage. A water sensor is fitted to the water separator in order to warn the driver that the water separator has to be drained.

When the water level in the water separator reaches a certain point, the water separator warning light in the instrument cluster comes on.

- **Service Interval**
Change every 150,000 km or 5 year

Location:

Behind the fuel filter (between the fuel filter and the dash panel) in the engine compartment (engine intake side)

Draining the Water from Water Separator

Drain the water from the water separator whenever replacing the engine oil.

After draining the water, press the priming pump until it becomes rigid. Do not crank the engine before doing this procedure. For the detailed draining procedures, please refer to "How to drain the water from the fuel filter" in the water separator warning light section.

CAUTION

- Replace the water separator according to the specified maintenance schedule.
- Drain the water from the water separator whenever replacing the engine oil.
- After replacing the water separator or draining the water, press the priming pump until it becomes rigid.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

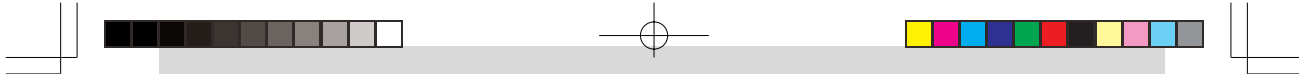
12

13

14

15

16

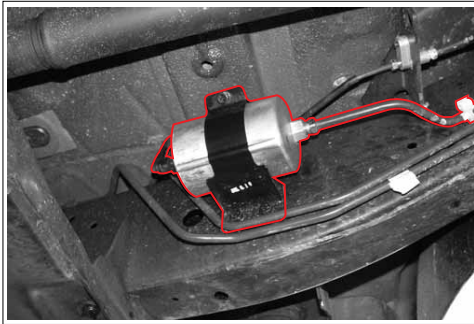


FUEL FILTER/DRIVE BELT

GASOLINE ENGINE

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

FUEL FILTER



If the filter is contaminated, the supplied fuel will be reduced, main components will be damaged due to entering the contaminated materials and the performance of catalytic converter will be deteriorated.

Replace the fuel filter according to the specified maintenance schedule.

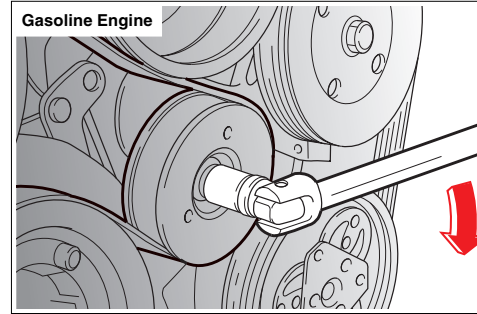
Service Interval

Replacement	Every 100,000 km (if using poor quality of fuel, replace every 30,000 km)
-------------	---

CAUTION

Replace with a Ssangyong genuine part with specified intervals.

DRIVE BELT



You do not need extra tension adjustment, but check belt for wear or tension by pushing the belt and replace if necessary.

Belt Replacement: Gasoline Engine

Install a device onto the tension adjuster and rotate clockwise to release the tension and take off the belt.

WARNING

The engine could inadvertently start while checking the belt and cause moving parts to crush or cut. Remove key from ignition switch.

BRAKE & CLUTCH PEDAL

BRAKE PEDAL

Checking Pedal Free Play

Turn off the engine and depress the brake pedal several times to deplete the vacuum in the brake system. Gently depress the brake pedal by hand and measure the distance it moves until slight resistance is felt. If the free play is more or less than specified, have the brakes adjusted by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation.

Brake pedal free play	1 ~ 4 mm
-----------------------	----------

CLUTCH PEDAL

Checking Pedal Free Play

Depress the pedal by hand until clutch resistance is felt; ensure free play is within specification.

If the free play is more or less than specified, have the clutch or linkage adjusted by Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation.

Clutch pedal free play	5 ~ 10 mm
------------------------	-----------

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

PARKING BRAKE/CATALYTIC CONVERTER

0 PARKING BRAKE

1 Check the stroke of the parking brake by counting the number of notch clicks heard while fully applying it from the released position.

2 Also, the parking brake alone should securely hold the vehicle on a fairly steep grade. If the number of clicks is more or less than specified, have the parking brake adjusted by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation.

Stroke	4 ~ 7 notches at a force of 20 kg
--------	-----------------------------------

8 CATALYTIC CONVERTER

9 The catalytic converter is located between exhaust manifold and center muffler. The catalytic converter consists of monoliths with honeycomb shaped structure of ceramic material which are elastically mounted in a wire mesh structure.

10 This precious metal coating on the monoliths accelerate the reduction and/or oxidation of toxic components.

11 On vehicles with a catalytic converter for unleaded fuel, lead fuel will damage the catalytic converter and parts of the electronic system, thereby rendering them inoperative.

Damage to the catalytic converter or the vehicle may result if the following points are not observed :

Consult a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation as Quickly as possible in the event of misfiring, irregular engine running following a cold start, a significant loss of engine power or other unusual malfunctions which may indicate a fault in the ignition system.

If necessary, driving may be continued for a short time at a low speed and with low engine revolutions.

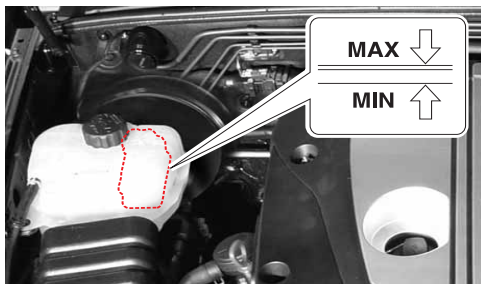
You should therefore avoid :

- Frequent repeated cold starts.
- Actuation of the starter for an unnecessarily long time during starting (fuel is injected during the starting procedure).
- Allowing the tank to become empty (an irregular fuel supply leads to overheating)
- Starting the engine by pushing or towing (unburned fuel may enter the catalytic converter) : use jump leads.

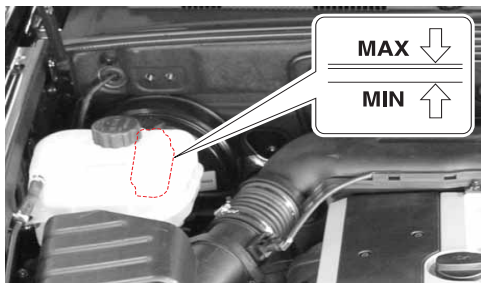
Have all maintenance work carried out by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Operation. You can then be certain that all components of the vehicle's electrical, injection and ignition system will be operating correctly, that your vehicle has a low level of pollutant emission and that the catalytic converter system will have a long life.

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID (WITH M/T)

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



Specification and Replacement

Specification	DOT 4
Service interval	Every 2 years

Level Check and Replenishment

- The fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" levels on the reservoir.
- Check the level on a level surface. If it drops to or below the MIN mark, refill the tank with the specified fluid. Only use the specified fluid.

CAUTION

- Be careful not to let any foreign materials enter the tank when adding the fluid.
- Do not add the fluid above the "MAX" level.
- Do not allow the fluid to make contact with the body paintwork.
- After adding the fluid, tighten the cap securely.
- If frequent refills are required, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

WARNING

- Use only the Ssangyong genuine brake fluid.
- Do not allow the fluid to make contact with skin or eyes. If contact happens, rinse affected areas immediately with plenty of water. If irritation persists, consult a doctor.
- The fluid gradually decreases according to brake pad wear. A sudden drop of the fluid level may indicate a leak in the system. In this case, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

TRANSFERENCE OIL

0 TRANSFERENCE OIL

1 Service Interval, Specification and Capacity

2	Service interval	Inspect every 15,000 km	
3		Change every 60,000 km (frequent check of oil leak)	
4	Specification	ATFDEXRON® III	
5	Capacity	Part time	1.4 L
6		Direct Injection Diesel Engine, Gasoline Engine	
7		AWD	1.1 L

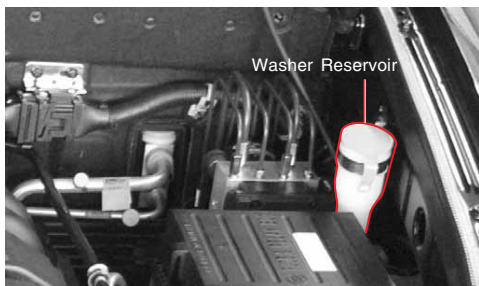
WASHER FLUID

TOP UP WASHER FLUID

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



Frequently check the washer fluid level and add the specified product as needed.

In winter, use only the specified washer liquid for winter season.

WARNING

- The washer fluid includes flammable materials to prevent freezing. It could cause a fire when directly contacted with flames. When checking the washer fluid, avoid the flames near the washer fluid tank.
- If engine oil or antifreeze is used as the washer fluid, it will decrease your visibility through the windshield and may cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If you use plain water as washer fluid, it will freeze during the winter and damage the washer fluid reservoir and motor. Use only the specified washer fluid.
- If you operate the washer switch without washer fluid, the motor could be damaged due to overloads. Therefore, if there is no washer fluid, do not operate the washer motor.
- Operating the wipers on a dry surface on the windshield or rear window without any washer fluid may cause damage to the glass. Operate the wipers after sufficiently spraying the washer fluid.
- Avoid any spills of washer fluid on the engine or body paint of your vehicle during replenishment. If washer fluid spills onto your hand or other body part, wash it away under a clean water flow.
- There is no independent washer reservoir for the tailgate window. The front washer reservoir is also for the tailgate window.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

REXTON II

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

13-23

BATTERY

0

1

2

3

4

5

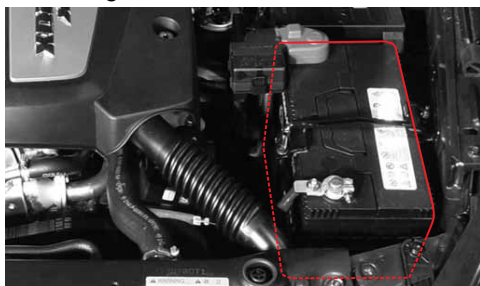
6

7

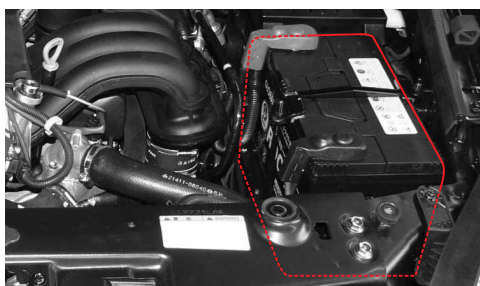
8


9

Diesel Engine



Gasoline Engine



When the battery charge warning light () on the instrument cluster comes on, the battery is not normally charging. If the warning light comes on while driving, turn off all unnecessary electrical devices and have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

Battery Maintenance

- Make sure the terminal connections are securely tightened.
- If the terminals are corroded, clean them with a wire brush or sand paper.
- The battery terminal should be disconnected only when the ignition key is removed from the key cylinder. Disconnecting the terminal with the key in the "ON" or "ACC" position may cause a sudden change in voltage and damage various electrical systems.
- Check the battery for any cracks, damages or leaks. Replace it if necessary. To remove any battery fluid on the battery surface, wear rubber gloves and wipe the fluid out with a wet-soapy cloth.

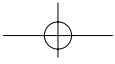
Specification

Specification	DC 12V
Capacity	90AH

13-24

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

REXTON II



⚠ WARNING

- The battery has acid that can burn you. And its gas can explode. You can get serious injuries if you are not careful. Keep naked flames, sparks and smoking items away from the battery.
- Loosely connected batter terminals can set up sparks. These sparks can cause a fire with flammable gas. Therefore, tightly connect the terminals.
- At night, if you need to check the engine room, do not use a lighter, but only use a battery-powered flashlight.
- Because the battery electrolyte is very strong acid, avoid any direct contact of the battery electrolyte on your skin or vehicle's body. If the acid contacts your skin, thoroughly wash your skin with fresh water and see your doctor. Do the same on your vehicle.
- Wear eye protection when working with a battery. If working in a closed area, keep good ventilation.

⚠ CAUTION

- If you disconnect the battery terminal when the engine is running, electrical systems could be damaged.
- To remove the battery cable, disconnect the negative cable first. And be careful on the battery terminal polarity when you connect the cables. The negative and the positive should not be confused.
- The polarity of the battery, i.e. the connections for positive and negative cables, must not be interchanged. Never short-circuit the battery.
- When the ambient temperature is too low, the battery capacity will drop and can be frozen.
- Keep the battery electrolyte at its specified level. If the electrolyte level is higher than the MAX level, it can overflow during battery charging and if the electrolyte is overcharged, the battery can explode.
- Only use a battery with the approved voltage and capacity. Otherwise, an incompatible battery can catch fire.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

SPARK PLUGS



Spark plugs should be inspected periodically for carbon deposits. When carbon accumulates on a spark plug, a strong spark may not be produced.

If necessary, clean the electrodes with a fine wire brush and carefully scrape the carbon off the insulator with a small file. The spark plugs should then be blown clean with compressed air and the upper insulator wiped clean. And adjust the spark plug gap.

Service Interval

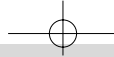
Replacement (G32D)	Change every 60,000 km
(G32D) Specification	NGK: BKUR5ETZ-10
Gap	1 ± 0.1 mm

CAUTION

- When replacing the spark plugs, disconnect the negative terminal of the battery and turn off all the switches.
- It is recommended that the engine be cool or cold when changing the spark plugs (you could burn yourself).
- Do not use non-recommended spark plugs.
- Do not allow contaminants to enter spark plug hole.

WARNING

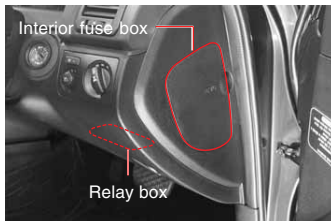
Spark plugs may be very hot. Be careful not to burn yourself.



FUSE AND RELAY BOX

If any of the electrical system components do not operate, check its corresponding fuse. If the fuse is blown, replace it with the same capacity.

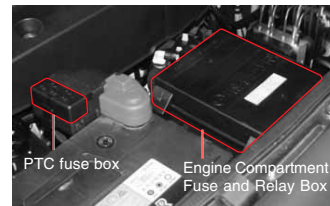
Interior Fuse Box



Interior fuse box is located at the left side of the instrument panel and relay box is located on the floor under left instrument panel.



Engine Room Relay and Fuse Box, PTC Fuse Box

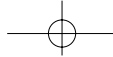


Engine room fuse box is located at the right side in engine compartment and PTC fuse box is installed on the battery.

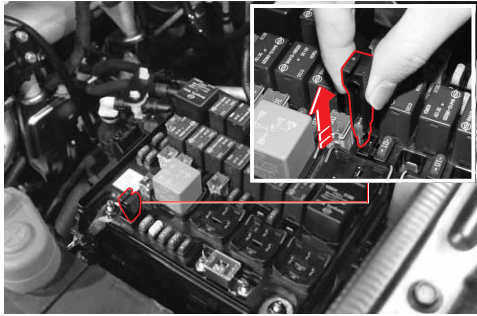
CAUTION

- When an electrical system does not operate, check its fuse first. If a fuse is blown, check its capacity and replace it with the same capacity.
- If you remove an electric system's fuse while the system is operating, the electrical equipment could be damaged. Always remove the ignition key from the ignition switch and turn off all electric devices.
- Always replace a specified fuse with the same rating.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked and repaired by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

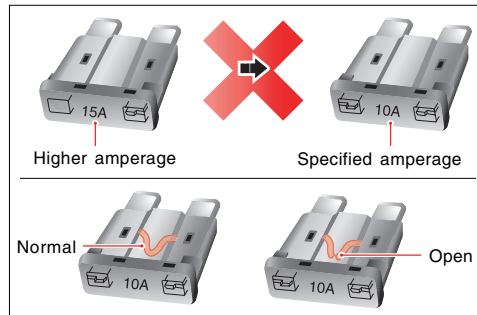
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



0 HOW TO CHECK AND REPLACE FUSE



1. Turn off all electrical systems and remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Open the fuse and relay box cover.
3. Locate the defective fuse.
4. Pull out the relevant fuse by using the fuse puller.
5. Visually check whether it is blown or not.
6. If normal, insert it to its original position.
7. If blown, check its capacity and replace it with the same capacity.



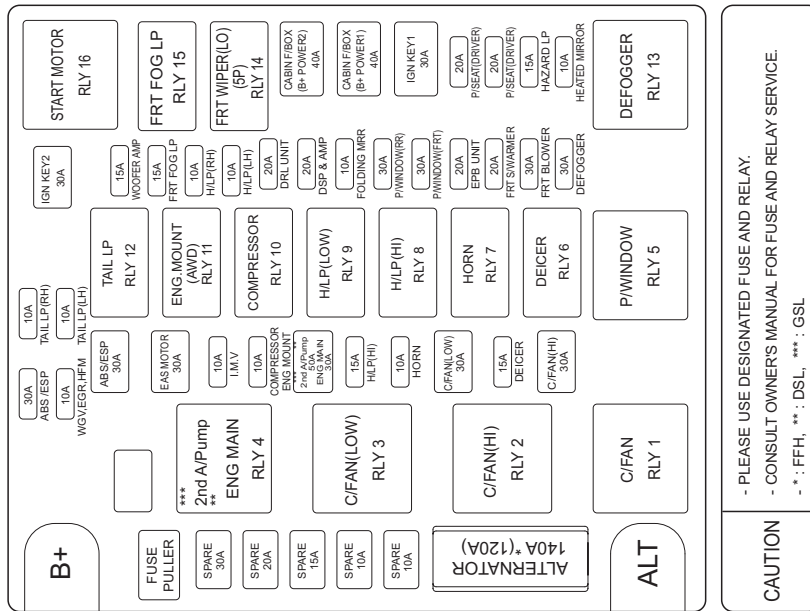
⚠ WARNING

- The use of anything other than the specified fuse could cause damage to the electrical system and even cause a fire.
- The use of different types or different rating fuses could cause damage to the electrical system and even cause a fire. Always replace a fuse with the one with the same rating.

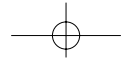
NOTE

The underhood fuse and relay box has some spare fuses. Refill the fuses immediately as you use them. The fuse rating is indicated on the upper surface of the fuse.

ENGINE ROOM FUSE BOX LABEL

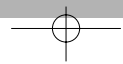
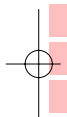
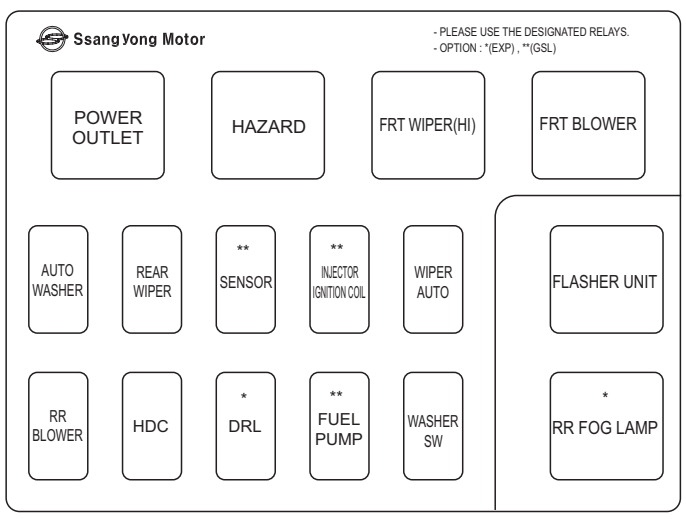


- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



0 INTERIOR RELAY BOX LABEL

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



INTERIOR FUSE BOX LABEL

PLEASE USE DESIGNATED FUSES.
***H GSL OPTION

NO.36 10A	START MOTOR	NO.32 20A	PASS. SEAT	NO.24 7.5A	MEMORY	NO.16 7.5A	BLOWER MOTOR A/CON DEFOGGER	NO.8 7.5A	SEAT UNIT NAVIGATION EAS, EPB
NO.35 20A	C/LIGHT P/OUTLET	NO.31 -	SPARE	NO.23 15A	DOOR LOCK RR.FOG LAMP	NO.15 15A	RR WIPER RR WASHER	NO.7 7.5A	CLUSTER
NO.34 7.5A	O/SIDE MRR P/OUTLET	NO.30 15A	NAVIGATION TUNER UNIT DVD CHANGER	NO.22 10A	IMMOBILIZER **GSL ECU	NO.14 15A	FRT WIPER FRT WASHER	NO.6 7.5A	ENG PREHEATG IMMOBILIZER PTC, STOP LAMP
NO.33 10A	AUDIO NAVIGATION DVD CHANGER	NO.29 15A	RR BLOWER	NO.21 15A	**ENG SENSOR	NO.13 7.5A	ECM MRR S/ROOF SSPS	NO.5 15A	B/UP LAMP T/SIG LAMP
		NO.28 10A	DIAGNOSIS BUZZER, CIGELL, SPREN EAS	NO.20 20A	**INJECTOR & IGN.COIL FFH	NO.12 15A	REAR POWER OUTLET	NO.4 10A	ABS/ESP
		NO.27 10A	RR WIPER	NO.19 20A	**FUEL PUMP	NO.11 15A	FRONT POWER OUTLET	NO.3 10A	TCU, TGS TCCU, TOD
		NO.26 15A	STOP LAMP	NO.18 15A	AUDIO	NO.10 7.5A	STICS	NO.2 10A	H/LAMP, DRL R/SNSR & ALLIGHT COMP.ENG MOUNT
		NO.25 10A	INTERIOR LAMP	NO.17 15A	SEAT HEATER (REAR)	NO.9 7.5A	ENG ECU **FUEL PUMP **ENG SENSOR	NO.1 10A	AIR BAG
		20A	SPARE FUSE	15A	SPARE FUSE	10A	SPARE FUSE	7.5A	SPARE FUSE

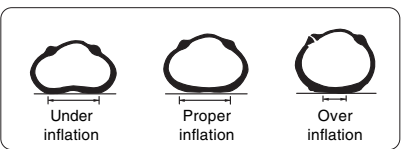
FUSE PULLER

SsangYong Motor

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE



Tire Inflation Pressure

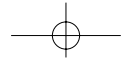
Type	Tire Inflation Pressure	Tire	Wheel
Driving tire	30 psi (2.06 bar)	235/75R 16	7.0J x 16
		255/70R 16	7.0J x 16
		255/60R 18	7.5J x 18
Emergency tire	60 psi (4.13 bar)	175/90R 16	5.5J x 16

CAUTION

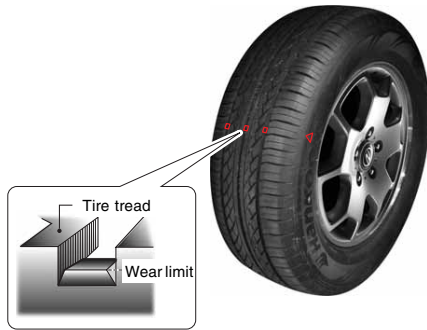
- Maintaining the specified tire pressure is essential for comfortable riding, driving safety, and long tire life. Incorrect inflation pressures will increase tire wear and will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfortable driving and fuel economy. Always make sure that the tire inflation pressure is correct.
- Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure, including the spare wheel, prior to any long journey (before the tire is heated up).
- Even the temporarily installed spare tire should be inflated properly.

NOTE

The tires should be checked before they are heated up using an tire pressure gauge.



TIRE WEAR CHECK

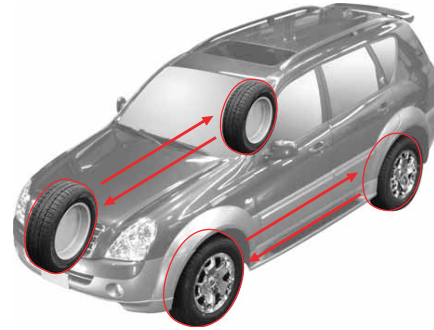


The tires on your vehicle have built-in tread wear indicators that appear between the tread grooves. The tire should be replaced when the wear indicators appear in two or more adjacent grooves.

⚠ WARNING

- Driving on worn or damaged tires is very dangerous and may cause an accident. Also, a damaged tire could burst.
- Check tires regularly for any damage (foreign objects, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges in side walls) and replace if necessary.

TIRE ROTATION

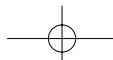


To avoid uneven wear of tires and to prolong tire life, inspect and rotate your tires every 5,000 km.

⚠ WARNING

- Be sure to replace and rotate the tires at a Ssangyong Authorized Service Center or professional tire shops.
- Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. Be sure to use the same size and type tires of the same manufacturer on all wheels.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

SPARE TIRE

The temporary spare tire is only for an emergency. Do not use it for normal driving. The spare tire should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Check the tire conditions and pressure as needed and always keep it available. For replacing procedures, refer to "In Case of Emergency" section in this manual.

CAUTION

- After replacing the tire, be sure to adjust the pressure to the specified pressure of the tire. Otherwise, the suspension system and driving system may be damaged.
- Keep the vehicle speed below 80 km/h if the spare tire is fitted.

WINTER TIRE

Use snow tires when driving on snowy or icy roads.

If winter tires are used, they must be installed to all 4 wheels.

WARNING

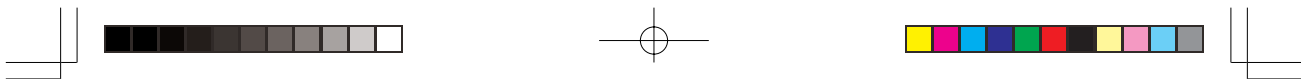
- Drive very slowly with extra caution on snowy or icy roads.
- The snow tire with arrow direction markings on its side wall should be installed according to the arrow direction.
- The snow tires cannot guarantee your safety on icy and slippery road. Drive with extra caution, avoiding sudden acceleration, braking or movements of the steering wheel.
- When the snow tires are not needed anymore, replace them with ordinary tires. Keep the removed snow tires in a cool and shady place. Be careful not to contact them with any oil, grease, or fuel.

TIRE CHAIN

Chains must be installed on the rear wheels only.

CAUTION

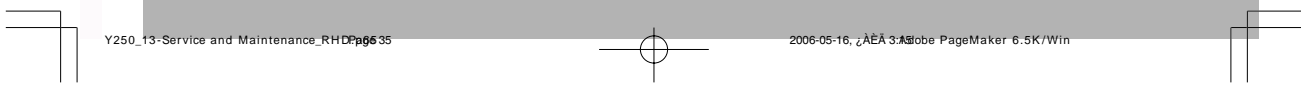
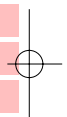
- If you have to install the chains on the front wheels, drive cautiously and avoid severe turns to prevent the surrounding parts from being damaged.
- In part time transfer case equipped vehicle, do not use 4WD mode when the snow chain is installed only on the rear tire. It may damage the driving system. If you want to use the 4WD mode, install the snow chains on all tires.



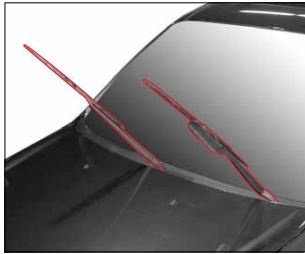
⚠ CAUTIONS WHEN CHECKING THE WHEEL AND TIRE

- Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. Be sure to use the same size and type of tires of the same manufacturer on all wheels. If you do not use the same tires on the vehicle equipped with the TOD (4 wheel drive), it may cause a serious damage to the vehicle's drive system.
- Check the inflation pressure, cracks and tearing of tires before driving.
- Improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to check and tighten the wheel nuts as specified before any long journey.
- Do not use non-genuine wheel and tire. Non-genuine wheel and tire may have inferior performance and function and dangerous for safe driving. Also, any defects due to using them cannot be covered by warranty.
- Be sure to check the tires and wheels before driving. If a wheel is damaged, the tire inflation pressure can be decreased and the tire can be damaged.
- If a tire has been impacted by a stone or any other objects during driving, have it checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.
- The use of tire sizes other than the specified sizes may cause abnormal operation of the steering wheel, increased fuel consumption, damage to the powertrain or the braking system, vibration, or uneven tire wear. Always use the specified tires from the same manufacturer.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



WIPER BLADE REPLACEMENT



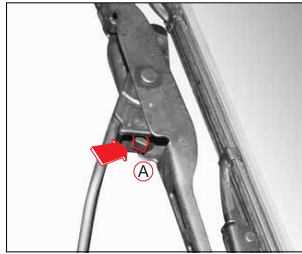
1. Turn the wiper switch to "OFF" position.
2. Lift the wiper arm up from the windshield.

NOTE

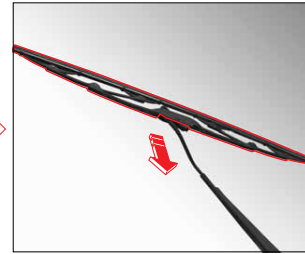
The tailgate wiper blade can be replaced in the same manner.

Wiper Blade

Wiper Blade	Front Wiper	Rear Wiper
	20"	14"



3. Press the safety button (A).



4. Slide the blade down and remove it from the arm.
5. Install a new blade.
6. Put the wiper arm down.

CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arm is lifted up. The wiper and hood may be damaged.
- Do not operate the wiper when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.
- Be certain not to apply any fluid polish containing oil to the windshield of your vehicle since this will result in streaks which impair vision. Contamination of either the window or the wiper blades with foreign materials can reduce the effectiveness of the windshield wipers. Never clean up the windshield with a waxed or oil-saturated cloth.

WARNING

- Malfunctioning wipers on a raining or snowing day may be detrimental to your driving safety. Never drive your vehicle with malfunctioning wipers on a raining or snowing day.
- Do not touch the running wipers. It may cause a personal injury.

DO-IT-YOURSELF OPERATION

When performing any inspection or maintenance work on your vehicle, always take care to prevent serious accidental injury to yourself or damage to the vehicle.



WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS WHEN PERFORMING DO-IT-YOURSELF OPERATION

WARNING

- Be careful not to touch any hot components such as the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, catalytic converter, or muffler when the engine is just stopped. They may burn you badly. Let the engine cool down before any service.
- When working with the battery or fuel related components, always stop the engine and do not smoke. Also, remove all flames or sparks near the vehicle.
- Do not connect and disconnect the battery terminals when the ignition key is in the "ON" position.
- The polarity of the battery, i.e. the connections for the positive and negative cables, must not be interchanged.
- The battery cables and wires transfer high voltage and current. Avoid any short circuit.
- Make sure that the ignition key is "OFF" when performing any work in an enclosed space such as a garage.
- Keep the used oil and coolant out of reach of children. (For a proper disposal of them, contact a professional service.)
- When checking your vehicle, you must turn off the engine first. Then, put the shift lever into the "P" (automatic transmission) or "Neutral" (manual transmission) position and apply the parking brake.
- The electrical cooling fan can start to operate unexpectedly even when the engine is stopped. Disconnect the negative battery cable before you check the radiator, cooling fan or nearby parts.

CAUTION

- Check the level of the engine oil and every fluid including coolant daily. If you drive while the fluid levels are low, your vehicle can be damaged and such damages will not be covered by warranty.
- Use only the genuine Ssangyong oils and fluids.
- Do not allow oils and coolant to make contact with skin or painted surfaces during inspection or refill of them. They can also damage paint finish. If skin contact happens, rinse affected areas immediately with plenty of water and then consult a doctor.
- Do not overfill the oil or coolant, otherwise the engine and transmission may be damaged. Maintain the specified level.
- The performance of oils and coolant may be deteriorated when they are exposed to dust and moisture. Be careful not to allow contact with dust while refilling.
- In spite of very limited driving of your vehicle, oils and other fluids can disappear over the time. Therefore, check their levels frequently.
- Improperly disposed engine oil and/or other fluids can pollute the environment. Dispose used fluids in accordance with local environmental regulations.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES (DIESEL ENGINE)

* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility. You should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service chart.

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first								
	x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	

ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

Drive belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
* Engine oil & filter	EU	Initial check: 5,000 km, and replenish if necessary, change every 15,000 km or 12 months								
(1)* (3)* (4)*	General	Initial change: 5,000 km, change every 10,000 km or 12 months								
Cooling system hose & connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine coolant (3)* (4)*		Change every 60,000 km or 3 years. And, inspect and replenish if necessary.								
* Fuel filter	Direct Injection (Diesel Engine)	EU	I	R*	I	R*	I	R*	I	R*
	General	Replace every 25,000 km (Draining water from fuel filter: whenever replacing the engine oil)								
Additional Water Separator (if equipped)		Replace every 150,000 km or 5 years (Drain the water whenever replacing the engine oil)								
Fuel line & connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air cleaner (2)*	EU	Initial clean: 5,000 km, clean every 15,000 km, replace every 30,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)								
	General	Initial clean: 5,000 km, clean every 10,000 km, replace every 30,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)								
Injection timing (See NOTE1)		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

NOTE 1: Adjust as required; - When excessive smoke is visible (black or white)
- Poor performance/economy

- Taxi, patrol service or delivery service (extended idling and excessive driving with low speed)

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

Shorten the service interval. Inspect the engine oil at any time, occasionally, if necessary refill the engine oil.

R - Replace or change.

(2)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition, driving in dusty condition or sandy condition, pollutant area or off-road driving, frequently inspect the air cleaner, if necessary, change the air cleaner.

(1)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition:

- Frequent stop-and-go traffic, extended idling, short driving distance below 6 km, driving distance below 16 km when the outside temperature remains below freezing
- Driving in a hilly or mountainous terrain, sandy, or dusty area
- High load driving such as trailer towing

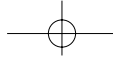
(3)* More frequent maintenance is required if under dusty driving condition.

(4)* Refer to "Recommended fluids, coolant and lubricants".

* Water separator: When replace the engine oil, also drain the water from the fuel filter.

13-38 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

REXTON II



* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVAL MAINTENANCE ITEM	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first								
	x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
	x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96

CHASSIS AND BODY

Exhaust pipes & mountings			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Brake / Clutch fluid (3)*			Change every: 2 years (inspect frequently)									
Parking brake / Brake pads (Front & Rear) (4)*	EU		Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.									
	General		Periodic check: every 10,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.									
Brake line & connections (including booster)			Inspect every 15,000 km or 1 years, adjust or replace if necessary									
Manual transmission oil (5)*			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R		
Clutch & brake pedal free play			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Front & Rear differential fluid (3)*	Front	Non IOP	Inspect frequently, change every 30,000 km									
		IOP	EU	Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
	Rear		Rigid	Inspect frequently, change every 30,000 km								
		EU		Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
		IRS	EU	Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
			General	Periodic check: every 10,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
Transfer case fluid (3)*			Inspect every 15,000 km, change every 60,000 km (Frequent check of oil leak)									
Automatic transmission fluid (6)*			Inspect every 30,000 km or 12 month (But change every 60,000 km under severe condition)									

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R - Replace or change.

(3)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".

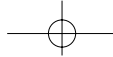
(4)* More frequent maintenance is required if the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or
- In hilly or mountainous terrain, or
- When doing frequent trailer towing, or
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

(5)* Inspect manual transmission fluid every 15,000 km (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally), then change every 60,000 km

(6)* Change automatic transmission fluid and every 60,000 km if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe conditions: Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

0 1 2	MAINTENANCE INTERVAL ITEM	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first								
		x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
		x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
		Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96

CHASSIS AND BODY

3	Chassis & underbody bolts & nuts tight / Secure (6)*	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary								
4	Tire condition & inflation pressure	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary								
5	Wheel alignment (7)*	Inspect when abnormal condition is noted								
5	Steering wheel & linkage	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
6	Power steering fluid & lines (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
6	Drive shaft boots (8)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
7	Seat belts, buckles & anchors	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
7	Lubricate locks, hinges & bonnet latch	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary								
8	Wheel bearing grease	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
9	Propeller shaft grease - Front / Rear (9)*	EU	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
		General	Inspect every 10,000 km Change every 10,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)							
10	Air conditioner filter	Inspect every 10,000 km Change every 10,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)								

Chart Symbols:

- I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.
 - R - Replace or change.
 - (3)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".
 - (6)* After completion of off-road operation, the underbody of the vehicle should be thoroughly inspected. Examine threaded fasteners for looseness.
 - (7)* If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.
 - (8)* After completion of off-road operation, the drive shaft boots should be inspected.
 - (9)* Inspect propeller shaft grease every 5,000 km or 3 months if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe condition.
 - In off-road or dusty road, or
 - In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or
 - In hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Severe Conditions in Air Conditioner Filter
- Pollutant area or off-road driving, extended air conditioner or heater operation

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES (GASOLINE ENGINE)

* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility. You should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service chart.

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first								
	x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
MAINTENANCE ITEM	x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96

ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

Drive belt	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine oil & engine oil filter (1)* (3)* (Initial change: 10,000 km)	R**	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Cooling system hose & connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine coolant (3)*	Change every 60,000 km or 3 years. And, inspect replenish if necessary.								
Fuel filter (2)*	Replace every 100,000 km (if using poor quality of fuel, replace every 30,000 km)								
Fuel line & connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air cleaner (2)*	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	I	R
Ignition timing	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spark plugs	-	-	-	R	-	-	-	-	R
Charcoal canister & vapor lines	-	-	I	-	-	I	-	-	-

Chart Symbols:

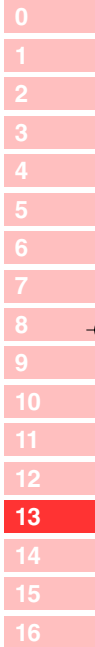
I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.
R - Replace or change.

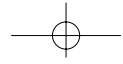
** - In order to secure engine long life and effective break-in, first oil (factory filled) would be recommended to drain with in 10,000 km.

(1)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition: short distance driving, extensive idling or driving in dusty condition, shorten the service interval.

(2)* If vehicle is operated under severe condition, pollutant area or off-road driving, driving in dusty condition or sandy condition, frequently inspect the air cleaner, if necessary, change the air cleaner.

(3)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".





* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

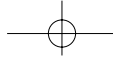
MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE INTERVAL	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first								
		x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120
		x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	

CHASSIS AND BODY

Exhaust pipes & mountings			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Brake / Clutch fluid (3)*			Change every: 2 years (inspect frequently)									
Parking brake /		EU	Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.									
Brake pads (Front & Rear) (4)*		General	Periodic check: every 10,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.									
Brake line & connections (including booster)			Inspect every 15,000 km or 1 years, adjust or replace if necessary									
Manual transmission oil (5)*			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R		
Clutch & brake pedal free play			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I		
Front & Rear differential fluid (3)*	Front	Non IOP	Inspect frequently, change every 30,000 km									
		IOP	EU	Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
		General	Periodic check: every 10,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.									
	Rear	Rigid	Inspect frequently, change every 30,000 km									
		IRS	EU	Periodic check: every 15,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
			General	Periodic check: every 10,000 km, adjust or replace if necessary.								
Transfer case fluid (3)*			Inspect every 15,000 km, change every 60,000 km (Frequent check of oil leak)									
Automatic transmission fluid (6)*			Inspect every 30,000 km or 12 month (But change every 60,000 km under severe condition)									

Chart Symbols:

- I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.
- R - Replace or change.
- (3)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".
- (4)* More frequent maintenance is required if the vehicle is operated under any of the following conditions:
 - In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or
 - In hilly or mountainous terrain, or
 - When doing frequent trailer towing, or
 - Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.
- (5)* Inspect manual transmission fluid every 15,000 km (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally), then change every 60,000 km
- (6)* Change automatic transmission fluid and every 60,000 km if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe conditions: Towing a trailer or off-road driving (Inspect the leak of fluid at any time, occasionally)



* Use only approved Ssangyong genuine parts.

* EU Countries: Only countries that belong to EU. (It does not apply to all countries in EU.)

MAINTENANCE INTERVAL ITEM	Kilometers (miles) or time in months, whichever comes first									
	x1,000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	
	x1,000 miles	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	

CHASSIS AND BODY

Chassis & underbody bolts & nuts tight / Secure (6)*	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary									
Tire condition & inflation pressure	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary									
Wheel alignment (7)*	Inspect when abnormal condition is noted									
Steering wheel & linkage	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Power steering fluid & lines (3)*	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive shaft boots	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Seat belts, buckles & anchors	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Lubricate locks, hinges & bonnet latch	Check frequently and adjust or replace if necessary									
Wheel bearing grease	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller shaft grease - Front / Rear (8)*	EU	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
	General	Inspect every 10,000 km Change every 10,000 km (But, shorten the service interval under severe conditions)								
Air conditioner filter										

Chart Symbols:

I - Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

R - Replace or change.

(3)* Refer to "Recommended fluids and lubricants".

(6)* After completion of off-road operation, the underbody of the vehicle should be thoroughly inspected. Examine threaded fasteners for looseness.

(7)* If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.

(8)* Inspect propeller shaft grease every 5,000 km or 3 months if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe condition.

- In off-road or dusty road, or

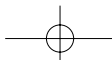
- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 32°C (90°F) or higher, or

- In hilly or mountainous terrain.

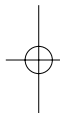
Severe Conditions in Air Conditioner Filter

- Pollutant area or off-road driving, extended air conditioner or heater operation

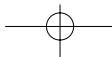
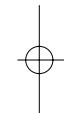


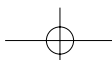


MEMO



Lined area for writing a memo.





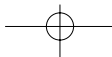
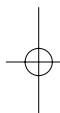
Lamp

14

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- **Bulb Specifications and Functional Check** 14-2
- **Location of Exterior Lamps** 14-3
- **Interior Lamp** 14-10

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



BULB SPECIFICATIONS AND FUNCTIONAL CHECK

BULB SPECIFICATIONS

Description		Amount	Specification (EU)	Specification (General)
Exterior lamp	Headlamp	High beam	2	55W ←
		Low beam	2	55W ←
		Turnsignal lamp	2	PY21W 28W
		Position lamp	2	W5W 8W
	Front fog light	2	H27W/2 ←	
	Side repeater	2	W5W 5W	
	Rear combination lamp	Stop (tail) lamp	6 (EU: 4)	P21/5W 27W(8W)
		Turnsignal lamp	2	PY21W 27W
		Back-up lamp	2	W16W ←
	Rear fog light	2	P21W -	
License plate lamp	2	W5W 5W		
High mounted stop lamp	-	LED type		
Front room lamp	2	10W ←		
Interior lamp	Glove box lamp	1	10W ←	
	Center room lamp	1	10W ←	
	Luggage lamp	1	10W ←	
	Door courtesy lamp	4	5W ←	

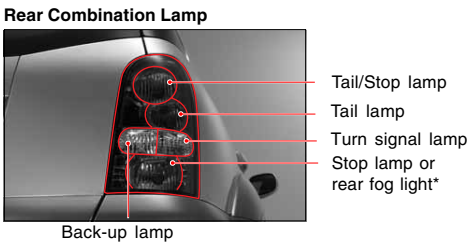
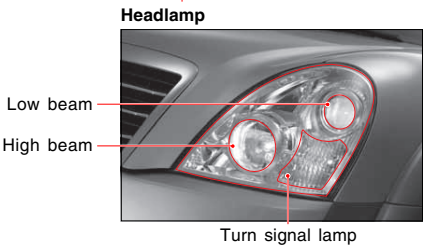
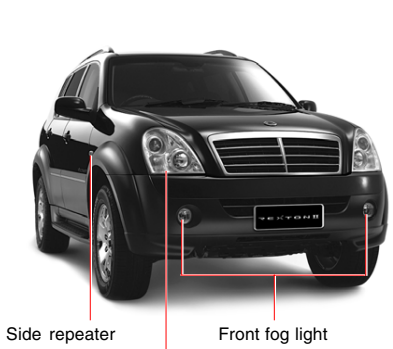
FUNCTIONAL CHECK

1. Check whether the lamp comes on or off by turning its switch.
2. Check the corresponding fuse when the lamp doesn't come on.
3. If the fuse is blown, replace it with a new one.
For replacing procedures, refer to the "In Case of Emergency" section in this manual.
4. If the fuse is not blown, check the bulb and replace it with a new one if needed.
5. If the bulb is not defective, have the system checked by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

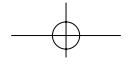
CAUTION

- Use only a specified capacity bulb for replacement.
- Disconnect the negative cable on the battery before replacing the bulb. Remove the ignition key.
- Do not apply excessive force to remove the bulb cover.
- Make sure that the corresponding switch and the ignition switch are turned off before replacing a bulb.
- Do not touch a bulb with bare hands immediately after turning off the lamp.
- Do not touch a bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints, dust, or moisture stuck to the bulb may shorten its life or cause it to explode. If you accidentally touch the bulb, wipe the bulb glass with a soft cloth.
- Never try to adjust the headlamp aiming angle. It should be done by a qualified technician in a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

LOCATION OF EXTERIOR LAMPS

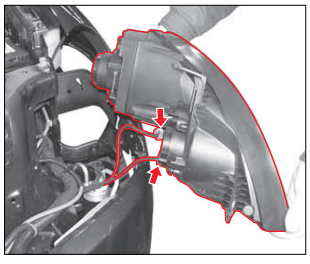
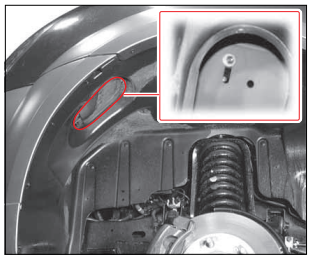


0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

REMOVING HEADLAMP HOUSING

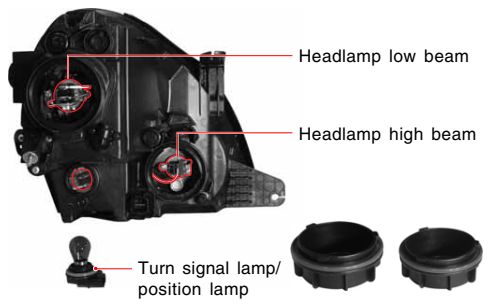


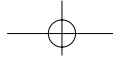
1. Turn off the light switch and remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Open the engine hood and remove two mounting bolts.

3. Remove the tire and unscrew the mounting nut in the wheelhouse.

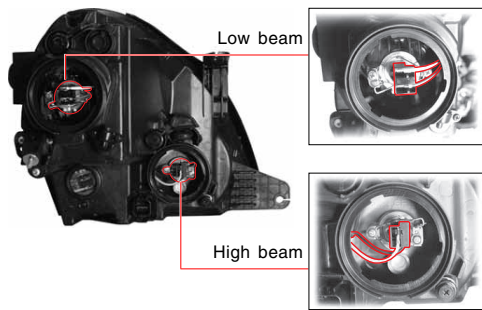
4. Separate the headlamp housing from the vehicle body and disconnect two electric connectors.

WARNING
 For safe driving, do not adjust the headlamp aiming screw. It should be done by a qualified technician in a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.





HEADLAMP



1. Remove the headlamp cover from the removed headlamp housing.
2. Release the fixing clip.
3. Replace the bulb with new one.
4. Install in the reverse order of removal.

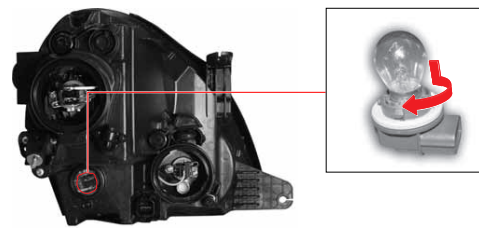


High beam bulb



Low beam bulb

TURN SIGNAL LAMP



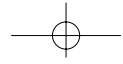
1. Turn the turn signal lamp connector to remove it from the removed headlamp housing.
2. Push down and turn the bulb to remove it.
3. Replace the bulb with new one.
4. Install in the reverse order of removal.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

REXTON II

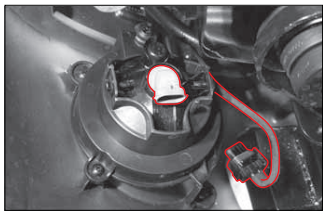
LAMP

14-5



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

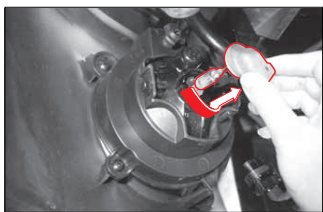
FRONT FOG LIGHT



1. Turn off the light switch and remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Disconnect the connector by releasing the locks at both sides.



Front fog light

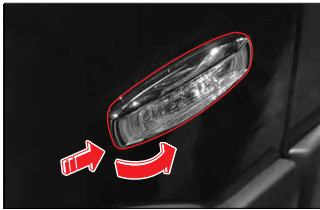


3. Remove the bulb by turning it.
4. Replace the bulb with new one.
5. Install in the reverse order of removal.



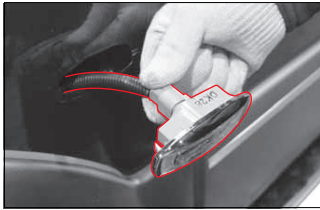
CAUTION
 The front fog lights can be accessed only under the vehicle body. Replacing the front fog light bulb should be done by a Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center.

SIDE REPEATER

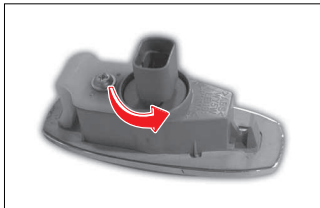


1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.

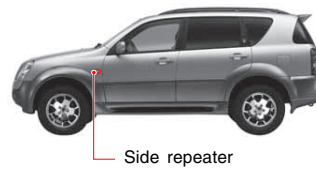
2. Pull the lamp housing out while pushing it rearward.



3. Disconnect the connector.



4. Remove the bulb housing by turning it.



Side repeater

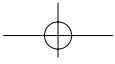


5. Remove the bulb.

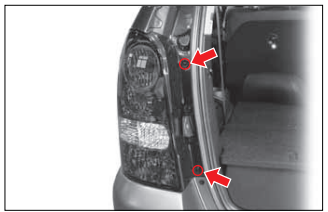
6. Replace the bulb with new one.

7. Install in the reverse order of removal.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



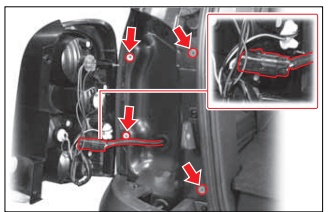
0	REAR COMBINATION LAMP
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	
13	
14	
15	
16	



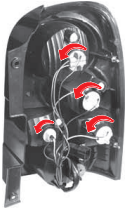
1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Remove two mounting bolts on the rear combination lamp housing.



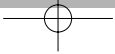
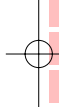
Rear combination lamp



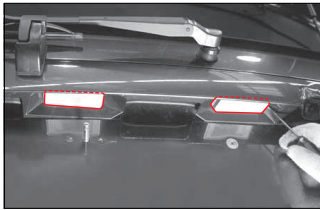
3. Disconnect the main connector and remove the rear combination lamp housing.



4. Remove the defective bulb.
Tail lamp/Stop lamp, Tail lamp, Turn signal lamp: Push down and turn the bulb to remove it.
Back-up lamp: Pull the bulb out.
5. Replace the bulb with new one.
6. Install in the reverse order of removal.



LICENSE PLATE LAMP



1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Remove the license plate lamp assembly by pushing it inward.
3. Remove the lamp housing by turning the connector.

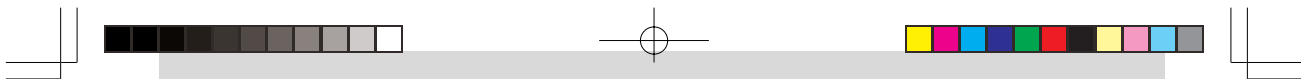


License plate lamp



4. Remove the bulb by pulling it.
5. Replace the bulb with new one.
6. Install in the reverse order of removal.

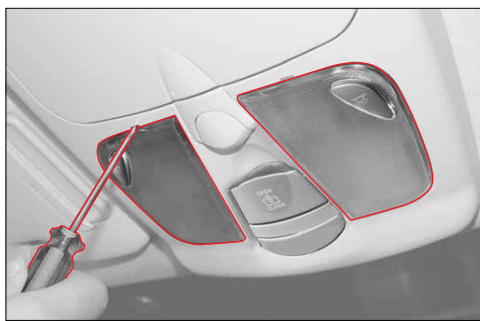
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



INTERIOR LAMP

- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

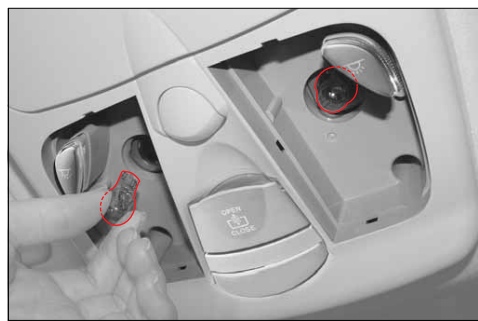
FRONT TOOM LAMP



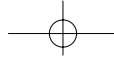
1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Pry off the lamp cover with a flat blade screwdriver.

CAUTION

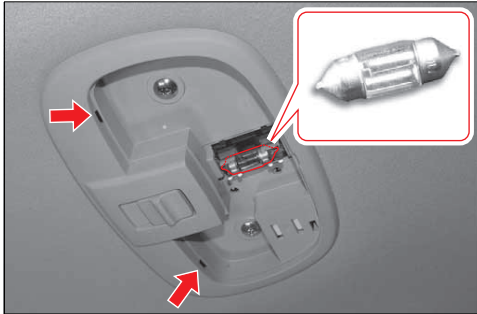
The cover should be removed from the rear section (arrow).
Otherwise, the cover may be damaged.
Be carefule not to damage the lamp cover when removing it.



3. Replace the bulb with new one.
4. Snap in the lamp cover on the lamp housing.



CENTER ROOM AND LUGGAGE ROOM LAMPS

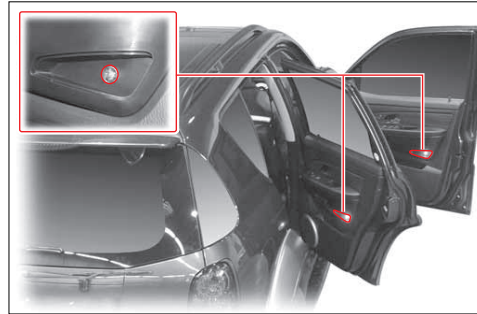


1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Pry off the lamp cover with a flat blade screwdriver.
3. Replace the bulb with new one.
4. Snap in the lamp cover on the lamp housing.

CAUTION

Be carefule not to damage the lamp cover when removing it.

DOOR COURTESY LAMP



1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Pry off the lamp cover with a flat blade screwdriver.
3. Replace the bulb with new one.
4. Snap in the lamp cover on the lamp housing.

CAUTION

Be carefule not to damage the lamp cover when removing it.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

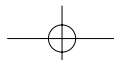
15

16

REXTON II

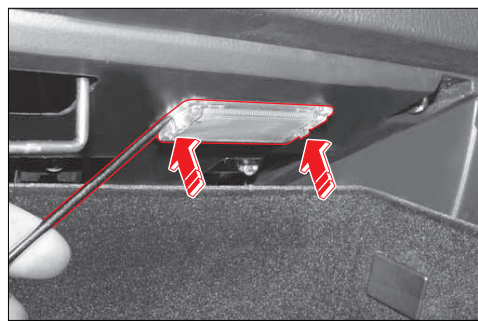
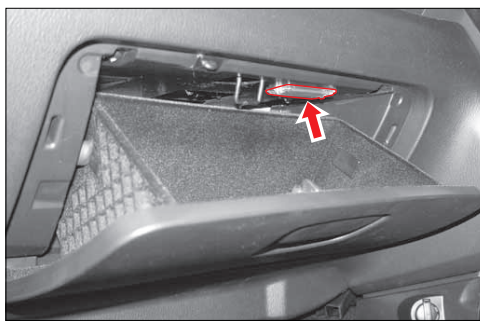
LAMP

14-11

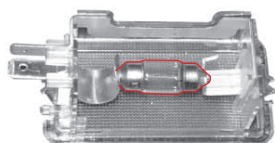


0 **GLOVE BOX LAMP**

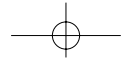
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



1. Remove the ignition key from the key cylinder.
2. Open the glove box.



3. Push both sides of the lamp cover to separate the glove box lamp assembly.
4. Disconnect the connector and remove the lamp assembly.
5. Replace the bulb with new one.
6. Snap in the lamp cover on the lamp housing.



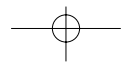
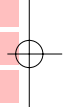
Vehicle Care

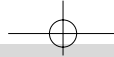
15

TABLE OF CONTENTS

- **Vehicle Care 15-2**
 - Running-In Period 15-2
 - Cleaning Agents 15-2
 - Vehicle Washing 15-3
 - Care and Cleaning Of the Interior 15-4
 - Glass Surfaces 15-5
 - Care and Cleaning Of the Exterior 15-5
 - Corrosion Protection 15-6
- **Caring For Your Vehicle under 0°C (32°F) 15-8**
 - Starting the Engine and Driving in the winter . 15-9
 - Parking In the winter 15-9
 - Other Maintenance Tips 15-10
- **Important Safety Instructions 15-11**
 - Before Driving 15-11
 - On The Road 15-13
 - Prohibition of Unauthorized Modifications ... 15-18

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





VEHICLE CARE

0 RUNNING-IN PERIOD

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

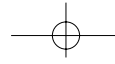
10 There are no particular running-in rules for your new vehicle. However, following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km can add to good future performance, fuel economy and long life of your vehicle.

- 12 • Allow the engine to warm up after starting.
- 13 • Avoid harsh operations such as abrupt fast starts, sudden acceleration and prolonged high speed driving.
- 14 • Do not race the engine.
- 15 • Drive at proper speeds, trying not to "strain" the engine.
- 16 • Avoid overload when climbing.



CLEANING AGENTS

Follow the manufacturer's advice whenever cleaning agents or other chemicals are used for the inside or the outside of the vehicle. Some cleaners may be poisonous or flammable, and improper use may cause personal injury or damage. When cleaning the inside or outside of the vehicle, do not use volatile cleaning solvents such as: acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers; or cleaning materials such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents, except as noted in the fabric cleaning advice on stain removal. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol, benzene, or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Open all vehicle doors for ventilation when any cleaning agents or other chemicals are used in the interior. Overexposure to some vapors may result in a health problem which is more likely to occur in small, unventilated spaces. To avoid possible permanent discoloration of light colored seats, do not let materials with non-fast colors come in contact with seat trim materials until these materials are totally dry. This includes certain types of casual clothing, such as colored denims, corduroys, leathers and suedes; also, decorative paper, etc.



VEHICLE WASHING

To avoid corrosion, wash your vehicle as soon as possible after driving on a coastal road (salted road), on a road where the snow removal chemicals (calcium chloride etc.) has been spreaded, in the area where the atmospheric fall-out/industrial pollutants are exist, or on a muddy or dusty road. Also, immediately wash your vehicle when things such as tree sap or bird droppings get on the painted surface.

Do not wash your vehicle under direct sunlight. Always wash your vehicle in the shade. If your vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long period, let it cool sufficiently before washing.

How To Wash:

1. Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with cool water to remove dust and loose dirt.
2. Clean the vehicle thoroughly using a mild soap or detergent mixed with clean and lukewarm water. Start at the top and work your way down.
3. Check whether the vehicle is smeared with tree sap, coal tar or other foreign materials. Rinse them off while paying particular attention not to damage the painted surface.
4. Remove the moisture using a soft cloth. If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the painted surface, to prevent corrosion, touch them up immediately.

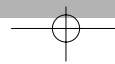
Bumper Washing

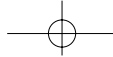
1. Remove the dirt or dust first with water and a sponge.
2. If the bumper is contaminated by engine oil or any lubricants, wipe it off using mild soapy water.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasive wax and strong cleaning materials such as steel wool which will scratch the vehicle body and bumper.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





0 **CARE AND CLEANING OF THE INTERIOR**

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16



With the use of modern trim materials, it is very important that you use proper cleaning techniques and cleaners. Failing to do this on the first cleaning may result in water spots, spot rings, or setting of stains or soils. All of which are more difficult to remove in a second cleaning.

Dust and loose dirt that are accumulated on interior fabrics should be frequently removed with a vacuum cleaner or soft bristle brush. Wipe vinyl or leather trim regularly with a clean damp cloth. Normal trim soils, spots or stains can be cleaned with cleaners.

Seat Belt Care

- Keep belts clean and dry.
- Clean seat belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.
- Do not bleach or dye belts since this may severely weaken them.

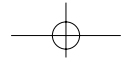
Interior Care

Use a dry cloth for normal cleaning.

- To wash synthetic resin like plastics, use lukewarm water and soap, then wipe off using a damp cloth that does not contain soapy water.
- Wipe off the moisture using a dry cloth.
- To remove the dust on the mats and seats, use a vacuum cleaner.
- In case the mat is seriously contaminated, use a cloth and mild detergent for cleaning.

CAUTION

- Chemicals may cause the discoloration or deformation of the interior trim.
- When cleaning the interior trim, never use chemicals such as acetone, enamel or bleaching agent.



GLASS SURFACES

Glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis. The use of a glass cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films.

Never use abrasive cleaners on any vehicle glass, as they may cause scratches. If abrasive cleaners are used on the inside of the rear window, any electric demister element may be damaged. Avoid placing decals on the inside rear window, since they may have to be scraped off later.

Cleaning the Outside of the Windshield

If your windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax or another material may be on the blade or windshield, clean the outside of the windshield with cleaning powder or an equivalent non abrasive cleaner. Your windshield is clean if beads do not form when rinsing with water.

CAUTION

Do not clean the windshield with oily or waxy cloth. It may cause noise or vibration while operating the wipers, poor front view, and light reflection at night time. In addition, the windshield may not be wiped off completely when it rains.

CARE AND CLEANING OF THE EXTERIOR

Exterior Finish

The paint finish on your vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention, and durability.

Washing your Vehicle

The best way to preserve your vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by frequent washing.

Wash the vehicle with lukewarm or cold water.

Do not use hot water or wash your vehicle under direct sunlight. Do not use a strong soap or chemical detergent.

All cleaning agents should be washed promptly from the surface and not allowed to dry on the finish.

Ssangyong vehicles are designed to operate under normal environmental conditions and to withstand the natural elements. However, unusual conditions, such as high pressure car washers, may cause water to enter the inside of your vehicle.

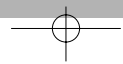
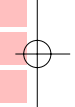
Polishing and Waxing

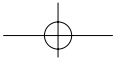
Periodic polishing and waxing is recommended to remove surface residue from your paint finish. Approved products are supplied through your Ssangyong Distributor.

CAUTION

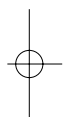
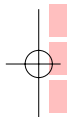
Do not use wax that contains an abrasive agent. The painted surface (including the bumper surface) may be damaged.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





- 0 **Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Parts**
Bright metal parts should be cleaned regularly to keep their luster.
- 1
- 2 Special care should be taken when cleaning the aluminum trim. To avoid damaging the protective trim, never use automotive or chrome polish, steam, or caustic soap to clean the aluminum trim. A coating of wax is recommended for all bright metal parts.
- 3
- 4
- 5 **Cleaning Aluminum Wheels, Alloy Wheels, and Wheel Covers**
- 6 Preserve the original appearance of wheels or wheel covers by keeping them clean and free from build-up of road dirt and/or road salt. Wash the parts regularly. Do not use abrasive cleaners or cleaning brushes, as they could damage the finish.
- 7
- 8
- 9 All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels should be cleaned regularly with mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil, select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush or metal polishes. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.
- 10
- 11
- 12 Clean the wheels after driving on a coastal road or on a road where the snow removal chemicals (calcium chloride etc.) has been spreaded.
- 13
- 14
- 15 **CAUTION**
Never clean the aluminum wheel or alloy wheel with acidic or alkalic detergents. Otherwise, wheel's protective finish could be damaged.
- 16



CORROSION PROTECTION

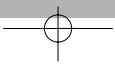
Your car was designed to resist corrosion. When it was built, special and protective finishes were used on most parts of your car to help maintain a good appearance, strength and reliable operation. Some parts which normally are not visible (such as certain parts located in the engine compartment and the underbody of the vehicle) are such that surface rust will not affect their reliability. Therefore, corrosion protection is not needed or used on these parts.

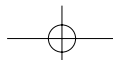
Sheet Metal Damage

If your car is damaged and requires body panel repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies proper anticorrosion material to the parts repaired or replaced so that corrosion protection is restored. (Also refer to "Finish Damage" on the next page).

Foreign Material Deposits

Calcium chloride and other salts, deicing agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys and other foreign materials may damage vehicle finishes if left on painted surface. Prompt washing may not completely remove all of these deposits. Other cleaners may be needed. When using chemical cleaners, be sure they are safe for use on painted surfaces.





Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into a major repair expense. Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your Distributor's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

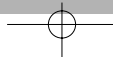
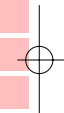
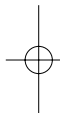
Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control can accumulate on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated corrosion (rust) can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and the exhaust system even though they have been provided with corrosion protection. At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Take care to clean any area where mud and other debris can accumulate.

Sediment packed in closed areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. If desired, your Ssangyong Distributor can do this service for you.

CAUTION

- When the engine is washed, fuel, grease or oil residues are washed off. Therefore you should use only a filling station or a Ssangyong Distributor who has oil separator equipment in the car wash bay.
- Used engine oil, brake fluid, transmission fluid, antifreeze, batteries, and tires should be disposed by using the local authorized waste disposal facilities, or have them disposed of by the vendor who is under a statutory obligation to do so when you replace them.
- None of these items should be placed in the household recycling bins or poured into the sewage system.
- Everyone should be concerned about environmental protection.
- Help by doing your share.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



CARING FOR YOUR VEHICLE UNDER 0°C (32°F)

0 CARING FOR YOUR VEHICLE UNDER 1 0°C (32°F)

2 During the winter, undesirable road conditions frequently
3 happen. Therefore, appropriate preparations for emergen-
4 cies should occur.

5 Before driving in suburban or rural areas, or on a snowing
6 day, have bags of sand, snow chains, a shovel, gloves, and
7 old clothes in your vehicle.

8 Coolant

9 Before it gets cold, check the coolant level.

10 The conventional coolant is the 50:50 mixture of water and
11 antifreeze.

12 If only water has been added into the coolant reservoir, the
13 engine and the cooling system of your vehicle may seriously
14 be damaged when the water freezes as it gets below the
15 freezing point.

16 CAUTION

- When the vehicle is shipped, the cooling system is filled with a four-season coolant.
- Before adding or refilling coolant, ensure that the coolant is a 50:50 mixture of water and antifreeze.
- Use only Ssangyong genuine coolant.

15 Washer Fluid

16 Use a genuine coolant that does not freeze on a cold day.

When non-recommended washer liquid is used, the liquid may form an ice. This will damage the wiper motor and hinder your safe driving.

Engine Oil

When the vehicle is shipped, the engine is filled with four-season engine oil.

Tires

Snow tires are more desirable on an icy or snow-covered road. Have snow tires installed on your vehicle before driving on such a road.

CAUTION

- When snow tires are installed, drive your vehicle at a lower speed than normal.
- Install snow chains correctly. Otherwise, the chains may damage the wheelhouses or the body of your vehicle.

Air Conditioner

When the air conditioner has not been used for an extended period of time, internal packing systems may become hard because the lubricating system has not worked for a prolonged amount of time. As a result, the refrigerant may leak or rusting may happen to the system. Malfunction of the air conditioner may result.

To maintain its optimal operating condition, it is recommended that the air conditioner be turned on for approximately 5 to 10 minutes every week throughout all seasons.

CAUTION

- Do not remove the refrigerant in the winter, even though you do not use the air conditioner.

STARTING THE ENGINE AND DRIVING IN THE WINTER

Starting the Engine in the Winter

During the winter, the engine experiences increased resistance from the powertrain; the battery and the starter show decreased capacity. Therefore, start the engine in an appropriate way.

After starting the engine, allow time to warm it up before driving the vehicle. Warming up the engine will increase its life expectancy and help you drive safely.

CAUTION

The glow plugs of the diesel engine should sufficiently be warmed up before the engine starts.

Driving in the Winter

Maintain at least twice as long of a normal driving distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. When stopping, shift into a lower gear to use the engine brake.

Avoid speeding, abrupt acceleration, sudden braking, or drastic maneuvering of the steering wheel.

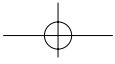
PARKING IN THE WINTER

When the parking brake is applied in cold weather, ice may form on the brake system and cause some difficulty moving the vehicle. When parking on a hill, first, apply the parking brake. Put the shift lever into the "1" or "R" position (Manual Transmission) or into the "P" position (Automatic Transmission). Put a chock behind a tire and release the parking brake.

WARNING

When ice forms on the parking brake system, an attempt to move the vehicle without removing the ice may damage your vehicle. Wait until the ice melts away and gently move your vehicle.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

OTHER MAINTENANCE TIPS

After driving on a calcium chloride (salt) spayed road, wash the bottom of your vehicle as soon as possible to avoid any rust.

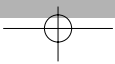
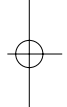
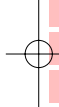
When parking on a snow-covered road, the brake system may begin to have some ice on it. The ice will decrease your vehicle's braking ability. If this happens, drive at a low speed and use the brake frequently to remove the ice. After regaining the braking ability, drive your vehicle at a normal speed.

- WARNING**
- When there is ice on the wiper blades, turning on the wiper switch may put an extra burden on the wiper motor and damage it. Avoid using the wipers when ice is on the blades.
 - When driving on a snow-covered road, a large amount of snow may build up under each wheelhouse. This buildup prevents the steering wheel from moving freely. Therefore, remove the snow buildup frequently.

Diesel Fuel in the Winter

On an extremely cold day, paraffin, one of the chemicals in diesel fuel, may separate from the diesel fuel. This separation makes starting the engine difficult. During the winter season, Kerosene is added to diesel in the domestic market to prevent the paraffin separation and secure stable flow of the fuel through the fuel filter. The amount of added Kerosene into diesel can vary by location and their average winter temperatures. Therefore, to ensure an easy start on a cold day, park your vehicle inside of a garage. If possible, fill up the fuel tank after each driving to prevent ice from forming inside of the fuel system.

- CAUTION**
- Change engine oil and the fuel filter as scheduled. Contaminated engine oil will lose its liquidity, clog the fuel filter and oil filter and cause difficulties starting the engine.
 - Do not add any additive other than Kerosene or alcohol into the fuel tank to improve starting of the engine. The additive may decrease the lubricating ability of the internal fuel system; the additive may have a different flashing point. This will damage the fuel system or produce an excessive exhaust fume.



IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

BEFORE DRIVING

For safe and comfortable driving, check each part of the vehicle before driving your vehicle.

CAUTION

To inspect your vehicle effectively, park it on a level surface and check it in the following order.

Checking Problematic Parts

Check those parts that you felt they were problematic to see if they would be a hindrance on the road.

Checking the External Appearance of Your Vehicle

- Check for flat tires and check the air pressure.
- Check the side mirrors and the license plate for dirt or damage.
- Check all lights for damage or dirt.
- Check for oil stains under a parked car.

Checking the Driving Conditions:

- Adjustment of the rearview mirror
- Applying the brake and releasing the parking brake
- All warning lights and indicator lights
- All lighting devices
- The adjustment of driver's seat
- Make sure that headlights, tail lights, rear lights, license plate lights, backup lights, directional signals, and stop lights work properly.

CAUTION

When checking the lights, look for the reflections on walls and in the mirrors, or get someone to help you.

Checking Engine Compartment

Check the following:

- Engine oil
- Power steering fluid
- Brake fluid
- Cooling system
- Drive belt

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

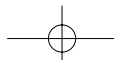
15

16

REXTON II

VEHICLE CARE

15-11



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Always Using Seat belt

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times.

WARNING

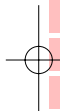
- Children, pregnant or nursing women who fail to fasten their seat belts properly might suffer from an accident. Always use seat belts as directed.
- Please carefully read the seats, seat belts and air bags sections.

Do Not Leave a Child Alone in the Vehicle

When left alone in the car, a child might unintentionally start the engine, cause a fire, or cause another accident.

WARNING

- During the summer, the temperature in your vehicle rises due to direct sunlight, and a child who is unable to adjust vehicle devices is in danger of suffocation.
- Do not leave a child alone in the car.



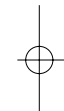
Taking Care of Children

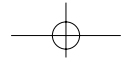
► Children should sit in the rear seat

To prevent children from interfering with your driving by accidental movements or misusing of devices, children should sit in the rear seat.

► Do not allow children to adjust comfort and safety devices

When a child gets in the vehicle, an adult should take care of doors, windows, seat belts, or seats making sure not to hurt the child's hands, feet or neck.





ON THE ROAD

If a Problem Occurs On the Road

- If a warning light comes on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and take emergency measures.
- If your vehicle suffered a serious blow to the bottom, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and check for a fuel leak, brake fluid spill, or others and for damages to the underbody of your vehicle.
- If you have a sudden puncture or blowout on the road, keep your composure, grip the steering wheel firmly, brake gently to reduce your speed, and then stop in a safe place.

WARNING

If the front axle and tires were severely hit on the road and you notice steering problems (steering wheel shakes up and down / right and left / in circular motion), immediately visit the nearest Ssangyong Dealer or Ssangyong Authorized Service Center to check and repair steering and suspension parts.

Avoiding Unnecessary Movements While Driving

- While driving, do not turn off the ignition key under any circumstances. Brakes and power steering will not work.
- While driving, do not put your hands through the steering wheel to manipulate various switches. It might interfere with operating the steering wheel and cause an accident.

Parking in a Safe Place

Do not park in places where hay, foliage, paper, rags, oil, or other easily inflammable materials are kept.

CAUTION

While driving or after immediately driving, the muffler and exhaust pipe are hot; inflammable materials near the vehicle might cause a fire.

Turning The Engine Off When Taking A Nap

You might cause an accident by unconsciously shifting the transmission or stepping on the accelerator pedal, so turn the engine off.

CAUTION

Continuous application of the accelerator pedal overheats the engine and exhaust pipe and might cause a fire.

Turning The Engine Off When Leaving Your Car

- Turn the engine off and lock the doors.
- Do not leave valuables inside the car. Do not leave a child alone in the vehicle.

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

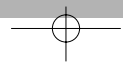
12

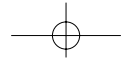
13

14

15

16





- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Moving Your Vehicle Only After Starting the Engine

Move your vehicle only after having started the engine.

WARNING
Driving the vehicle on a downhill using the downgrade slope without running the engine might cause an accident.

Parking Downhill

After firmly applying the park brake, set the gearshift lever in Reverse for vehicles with the manual transmission or set the gearshift lever in **P** for vehicles with the automatic transmission.

CAUTION
Place wheel chocks under the wheels.

Parking Uphill

After firmly applying the park brake, set the gearshift lever in first gear for vehicles with the manual transmission or set the gearshift lever in **P** for vehicles with the automatic transmission.

CAUTION
Place wheel chocks under the wheels.

When Parking or Stopping in An Enclosed Place

When parking or stopping in an enclosed place, turn off the engine.

WARNING
Leaving the engine running in an enclosed place, in a garage or indoors or in other areas with no air ventilation, might result in death from carbon monoxide poisoning.

Things To Watch For When Reversing

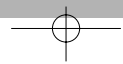
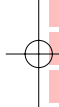
When reversing your vehicle, always make sure that there are no children or other obstacles behind the vehicle.

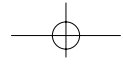
Driving in the Rain

When it is raining, the road surface becomes slippery and your tire-to-road traction is reduced, so you should drive more carefully than usual.

CAUTION
If you travel at a high speed on a wet road, your tires might not be in constant contact with the road; if your tires float, your vehicle starts hydroplaning. You might lose control of your steering and brakes.

After driving through a puddle of water, or after a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly several times while moving slowly to confirm that your brakes work normally before getting on the road.





Putting Away Things That Interfere With Driving

WARNING

- Do not leave inflammable materials, such as disposable lighters or sprays, inside the vehicle. They might cause a fire or an explosion.
- Do not place objects under the driver's feet or cover the car bottom with a very thick carpet as it might interfere with applying your brake, clutch or accelerator pedals.

Using Engine Brakes On Long Downgrades

If you repeatedly apply the brake pedal, the brakes overheat and the braking effectiveness can deteriorate. When on a long downgrade, shift to a low gear and apply your brake pedal together with the engine brake.

NOTE

The engine brake slows down your vehicle while the accelerator pedal is not applied; down-shifting increases the effectiveness of this retarding force.

Always Putting Out Cigarettes

- Make sure you have put out all cigarettes and matches completely before throwing them into your ashtray.
- Do not put many cigarette butts or materials that easily catch fire into your ashtray.

CAUTION

For safer driving, refrain from smoking while on the road.

Being Careful With Accessories

Do not attach accessories or other unnecessary things to your car's windows as they might interfere with your driving. Attached accessories can work as a convex lens and cause a fire or cause an accident.

Being Careful While Checking Your Coolant

When the engine is hot, never open the cap of the coolant tank.

Hot steam or liquid might surge upwards and cause burns to your face or body.

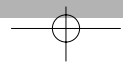
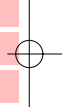
Always Using Ssangyong Genuine Parts

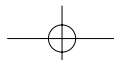
- You can maintain the safety and performance of your car by using only specified parts or Ssangyong genuine parts.
- You can distinguish specified parts by their part numbers and seal.

CAUTION

- The warranty does not cover problems caused by using non-Ssangyong genuine parts.
- You can distinguish an authentic Ssangyong genuine part by its hologram.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16

Driving on a Snowy or Icy Road

- Shift to the lowest possible gear and drive slowly.
- Since your braking distance is longer than usual, allow a longer following distance.
- If you accelerate or brake too fast, your vehicle will slide and you might get in an accident, so drive with caution. When braking, use the engine brake; apply your brakes only after you have slowed down considerably.
- When going down a slippery downhill, use the engine brake and drive slowly.

CAUTION

When traveling on a snowy or icy road, use snow tires for safer driving.

Driving on a Sandy or Muddy Road

- Keep your speed steady as low as possible.
- While driving, be careful not to accelerate or stop too quickly because you might get stuck in sand or mud.
- If your vehicle gets stuck in sand or mud, insert a rock or a piece of wood under the stuck wheel, lightly apply the accelerator pedal and gently shift back and forth between the reverse and forward gear to allow inertia to get your vehicle out.

CAUTION

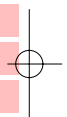
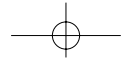
If your vehicle is stuck in snow, sand or mud and you cannot get out, do not repeatedly depress the accelerator pedal. If possible, with the aid of other vehicle, rescue your vehicle.

Driving on Unpaved and Mountain Roads

- Before driving, check road conditions such as if the road suddenly ends, or if there is enough space for a U-turn in the middle of the road.
- It's easy to slide in a road covered with much sand or with much dry dirt. Keep your speed low and steady.
- There is a danger of collapse on the outside of a mountain road.
- When coasting downhill, do not change gears; go down slowly by applying the engine brake.

Going Through Water

- If water gets into the electric system or engine, it might cause irreparable damage to your vehicle. Please refrain from underwater driving.
- If going through water is unavoidable, choose a shallow spot where the exhaust outlet wouldn't get submerged in water and proceed slowly at a steady speed.
- Before going through water, get out of your vehicle and check the bottom of the river. Do not go through water if the bottom is sandy or covered with big rocks.
- If several vehicles are going through water together, the first vehicle might burrow into the bottom, so be careful and cross in a different place if possible.



► Important things to remember when going through water

- If the engine stops while you are going through water, do not try to restart. Get your vehicle towed.
- Be particularly careful not to allow water to enter into the engine through the air cleaner.
- Never change speeds while going through water.

⚠ WARNING

If water gets into the brake system, the effectiveness of the brakes decreases. After going through water, move slowly and gently applying the brakes several times so that frictional heat dries the brake pads and disks. Check if the brakes work properly before continuing driving.

► Checking your vehicle after going through water

- Check the front, rear, right and left sides, transmission, axle hubs, propeller shaft, oil and fluid levels, and underbody; if you discover problems, get your vehicle checked immediately.
- Check all lamps and other electrical devices. If necessary, replace damaged components and get your vehicle checked.
- Check for damages to the vehicle body and underbody; if you discover problems, get your vehicle checked immediately.
- If the vehicle body is very dirty, wash your car to protect it.

Driving On Hill Roads

Position the gearshift lever in accordance with the road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

If you suddenly use the engine brake on an icy or slippery road, the vehicle might slide and get in an accident. Use the engine brakes after fully reducing your vehicle speed.

- On a steep downgrade, shift to the lowest gear to get the biggest effect of the engine brake.

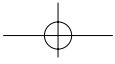
⚠ WARNING

If you repeatedly apply your brakes on a long downgrade, they may overheat, their effectiveness decreases and an accident might occur. When on a long downgrade, use the engine brake together with your brakes.

⚠ CAUTION

If you suddenly apply the engine brake while traveling at a high speed, the engine may get damaged. Slow down the vehicle speed and then downshift the gear.

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

Freeway Driving

- Before getting on a freeway, listen to the weather forecast, prepare thoroughly and check the fuel level, brake system, cooling system, and tires.
- Always respect the speed limit and refrain from speeding.
- Allow for a safe following distance, avoid sudden steering movements.
- When it rains or snows and the weather conditions are adverse, double the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle running in front of you. And reduce your speed by half.

CAUTION

Do not idle the engine for a long time; it wastes fuel and causes environmental pollution.

- Drive at a slow speed for the first 2 km if possible.
- Do not load your vehicle with unnecessary stuff.
- Refrain from quick accelerating and abrupt braking, travel at a steady speed.
- When you park or stop for a long time, turn the engine off.
- Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Keep your vehicle in the best possible condition by periodically checking it and perform maintenance.

PROHIBITION OF UNAUTHORIZED MODIFICATIONS

This vehicle contains various advanced electronic and control devices. Do not modify them without authorization.

Modification of Fuses and Circuits

Always use the Ssangyong genuine fuses of the specified capacity and do not alter or modify your vehicle's circuits. It might cause a fire.

Prohibition of Window Tinting

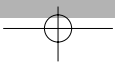
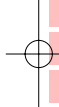
Modification such as coloring windows might cause leaks. The dark tinted glass may obstruct the driver's field of vision. Thus, it may cause an accident.

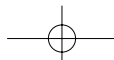
Using Non-Specified Tires and Wheels

If using non-specified parts, the steering wheel feels heavier, fuel consumption increases, brake performance decreases and the steering wheel might shake, wearing out tires when you are traveling at a high speed.

Performing Regular Checks

Always check your vehicle as specified in the inspection schedule, replace parts when necessary and record in your vehicle diary which parts were replaced.

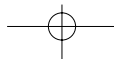
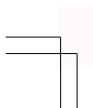
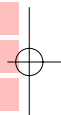
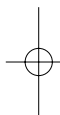


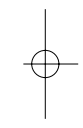
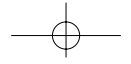


Index

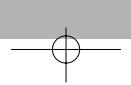
16

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16





0	3.5° aiming down of outside rearview mirror during reverse driving 6-17				
1	4-wheel drive system 4-32				
2	A				
3	ABS warning light 5-16				
4	Accident or fire 12-25				
5	Adjusting the instrument cluster illumination (black-face type) 5-9				
6	Air bag warning light 5-15				
7	Air cleaner 8-14				
8	Air cleaner 13-11				
9	AQS (Air Quality System) 9-16				
10	Audio play using the USB flash drive 4-20				
11	Automatic heater / air conditioner 9-6				
12	AV* & navigation system* 11-20				
13	B				
14	Battery charge warning light 5-15				
15	Battery 13-24				
16	Before driving 15-11				
17	Brake & clutch pedal 13-19				
18	Brake and clutch fluid (with M/T) 13-21				
19	Brake system 6-18				
20	Brake warning light 5-19				
21	Bulb specifications and functional check 14-2				
22					
23					
24					
25					
26					
27					
28					
29					
30					
31					
32					
33					
34					
35					
36					
37					
38					
39					
40					
41					
42					
43					
44					
45					
46					
47					
48					
49					
50					
51					
52					
53					
54					
55					
56					
57					
58					
59					
60					
61					
62					
63					
64					
65					
66					
67					
68					
69					
70					
71					
72					
73					
74					
75					
76					
77					
78					
79					
80					
81					
82					
83					
84					
85					
86					
87					
88					
89					
90					
91					
92					
93					
94					
95					
96					
97					
98					
99					
100					



G

Gear selector lever in automatic transmission	6-4
Gear selector lever positions	6-7
Glass surfaces	15-5
Glove box/front luggage net	11-10
Glow indicator (for diesel engine)	5-20

H

Hazard warning flasher switch	4-25
HDC (Hill Descent Control) switch*	4-26
HDC indicator	5-17
Heated glass switch	4-24
Heater/air conditioner system	9-2
High beam indicator	5-18
How to fasten the seat belts in second row seat	8-6
How to fasten the three point seat belt	8-5

I

Immobilizer indicator	5-14
Immobilizer system*	2-5
Important safety instructions	15-11
Inside rearview mirror	11-5
Instrument cluster (D27DTP, D27DT)	5-2
Instrument cluster (G32D)	5-4
Interior lamp	14-10
Interior switches	4-2

K

Key functions	2-7
---------------------	-----

L

Light switch	4-4
Listening to music with external audio device	4-23
Location of exterior lamps	14-3
Locations in engine compartment	13-3
Low fuel level warning light	5-19

M

Manual transmission	6-2
Multi-station*	4-18

O

On the road	15-13
Opening and closing devices	3-2
Opening and closing the doors with ignition key	2-9
Other maintenance tips	15-10
Outside rearview mirror control switch	4-17
OVM tools	12-6

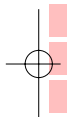
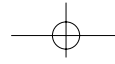
P

Parking aid system*	6-15
Parking brake/catalytic converter	13-20
Parking in the winter	15-9
Passenger's seat	7-9
Power outlet	11-9
Power steering fluid	13-13
Precautions regarding unauthorized modification & alteration	1-15
Preventive maintenance	10-3
Prohibition of unauthorized modifications	15-18

R

Rain sensing wiper*	4-9
Rear air conditioner* (dual A/C)	9-12
Rear cup holder/jack storage/DVD changer/navigation unit storage	11-12
Rear heated glass & antenna/movable ashtray	11-19
Recommended fluids and lubricants	0-2
Remote audio controls & gear shift button (A/T) on steering wheel	4-30
Remote control key* and ignition key	2-2
Removing the spare tire	12-7
Replacing air conditioner filter	9-14
Running-in period	15-2

0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16



- 0
- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16

S

- Safety mode (automatic transmission) 6-14
- Safety precautions 1-7
- Scheduled maintenance services 13-38
- Seat belt and air bag 8-2
- Seat belt reminder 5-15
- Seat belt 8-4
- Seat heating system* 7-14
- Seatback pocket/map pocket 11-13
- Second row seat 7-10
- Shift lever lock release and safety mode reset 12-17
- Spark plugs 13-26
- Specifications 0-4
- Speedometer 5-6
- SSPS warning light 5-14
- Starting the engine and driving in the winter 15-9
- Starting the engine and driving off the vehicle 1-5
- Starting the engine with jumper cables 12-2
- Storage bin for portable electronic device/ticket holder/AV jack 11-6
- Storage box in luggage compartment/luggage net 11-17
- Storage boxes and convenience device 11-2

- Sun visors 11-14
- Sunroof* 3-8
- Supplementary heating device 9-5
- Switch panel on driver's door trim 4-16
- Switches in center console 4-31
- Switches in overhead console, room lamp switch 4-35

T

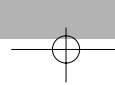
- Tachometer 5-6
- Tailgate and tailgate window 3-13
- Theft deterrent system 2-10
- Third row seat 7-12
- Tilttable steering wheel and horn 11-4
- Time and date display 4-19
- Tire 13-32
- Towing a disabled vehicle 12-18
- Trailer towing 12-20
- Transference oil 13-22
- Turbocharger inspection 10-4
- Turn signal/hazard warning indicator . 5-18

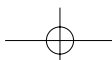
V

- Vehicle care 15-2
- Vehicle identification 0-8
- Vehicle washing 15-3

W

- Warning and caution 7-15
- Warning triangle* 12-5
- Warnings and cautions 9-4
- Warnings for air bag 8-18
- Warnings for seat belt 8-12
- Washer fluid 13-23
- Water separator warning light (DI engine only) 5-10
- Water separator warning light and engine check warning light 12-16
- When the engine is overheating 12-14
- Windows 3-6
- Winter (W) mode 6-13
- Winter mode indicator 5-14
- Wiper and washer switch 4-10
- Wiper and washer switch 4-8
- Wiper blade replacement 13-36





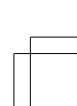
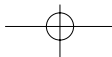
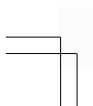
REXTON II (RHD) OWNER'S MANUAL

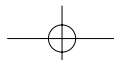
ISSUED BY
OVERSEAS A/S TEAM
SSANGYONG MOTOR CO., LTD.

150-3, CHILGOI-DONG, PYUNGTAEK-SI
GYEONGGI-DO, 459-711 KOREA

TELEPHONE : 82-31-610-2740
FACSIMILE : 82-31-610-3762

NOTE: All rights reserved. Printed in SSANGYONG Motor Co., Ltd.
No part of this book may be used or reproduced without the
written permission of Overseas A/S Team.





EDITION HISTORY

No.	CODE NO.	PRINTING DATE	MODEL YEAR	REMARKS
1	RRX1-6OM0E-6C-1000A	Mar. 2006	2006	

